Aristotle’s Nicomachean Ethics
Books II-III

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman
### Aristotle’s Nicomachean Ethics Books II and III
**Core Vocabulary (10 or more times)**

The following is a running list of all 152 words that occur ten or more times in the Books II and III. An alphabetized list is found in the glossary. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, noted at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. The left column indicates the page number where the word first occurs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἀν</td>
<td>modal adv.</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀπό</td>
<td>from, away from (+ gen.)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀρετή, ἡ</td>
<td>virtue, excellence</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀὔτός, -ῆ, -ό</td>
<td>he, she, it; same; -self</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γάρ</td>
<td>for, (yes) for; since, because</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δέ</td>
<td>but, and, on the other hand</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δέω</td>
<td>need, lack (gen.); mid. ask, request; imper. δεῖ, one ought, it is necessary (inf.)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δή</td>
<td>exactly, precisely, just; accordingly</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκ, ἐξ</td>
<td>out of, from (+ gen.)</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἔχω</td>
<td>have; be able; be disposed; know</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁ, ἡ, τό</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>1409</td>
<td>1409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡµεῖς</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>καί</td>
<td>and; also, even, too; in fact, actually</td>
<td>707</td>
<td>707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μέν</td>
<td>on the one hand</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µικρός, -ά, -όν</td>
<td>small, little</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σῶσ, -αι, -ον</td>
<td>which sort, who; for example</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰµί</td>
<td>to be, exist</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅτι</td>
<td>that; because</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅς, ἥ, ὅ</td>
<td>who, which, that</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>συν-δέ</td>
<td>and not, but not, nor; not even</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σώσ-είς, σωθεὶ-μα, σωθέ-νυ</td>
<td>no one, nothing, nothing</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σὺ, σῦκ, σύχ, σύχ:</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πλεῖων, πλέων (-ονος) ὅ, ἥ</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>φύσις, -εις ἥ</td>
<td>nature</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄλλα</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄλλος, -ῆ, -ο:</td>
<td>other, one...another</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γίγνοµαι</td>
<td>to come be, become, be born</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>διά</td>
<td>through (gen); on account of</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λαµβάνω</td>
<td>to receive, grasp, take</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπί</td>
<td>upon (gen.), to (acc.), near, at (dat.); in addition, furthermore, besides</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐτί</td>
<td>still, besides, further; in addition</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἥ</td>
<td>or (either...or); than</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Word</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσος -η -ον</td>
<td>as many as; all who, all which</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὐ-τε</td>
<td>and not, neither...nor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὐτως</td>
<td>thus, in this way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>φύω</td>
<td>grow, be by nature, be natural + inf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ποιέω</td>
<td>to do, make; bring about, treat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο</td>
<td>this, these</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τέχνη, ἡ</td>
<td>craft, art</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὦσπερ</td>
<td>as, just as, as if</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀγαθὸς, -ἡ, -ὁν</td>
<td>good, brave, capable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἁμαρτάνω</td>
<td>miss the mark, fail, do wrong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀνδρεία, ἡ</td>
<td>courage, bravery, manliness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀνδρείος, -α, -ον</td>
<td>courageous, brave, manly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>διαφέρω</td>
<td>differ; surpass, be superior to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δικαίος, -α, -ον</td>
<td>just, right, lawful, fair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰ</td>
<td>if, whether</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>κακός, -ή, -όν</td>
<td>bad, base, cowardly, evil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λοιπός, -ή, -όν</td>
<td>remaining, the rest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μὴ</td>
<td>not, lest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁμοίως</td>
<td>in the same way; similarly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν</td>
<td>every, all, the whole</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πράττω</td>
<td>to do, accomplish, make, act</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σώφρων, -οντος</td>
<td>temperate, moderate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀκόλαστος, -ον</td>
<td>indulgent, intemperate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄνθρωπος, ὁ</td>
<td>human being, man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δειλός, -ή, -όν</td>
<td>cowardly, timid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>διό: δι’ ὧ, on account of which, for which reason</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἕκνεις, -εως, ἡ</td>
<td>disposition, habit, state</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπιθυμία, ἡ</td>
<td>desire, longing, yearning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θαρρέω</td>
<td>to be confident, bold</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>κατά: down (from, to), in, according to, in respect to, corresponding to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λόγος, ὁ</td>
<td>word, speech, account, principle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὖν: and so, then; at all events</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>περί: around, about, concerning (acc/gen)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πρός: to, in relation to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>φοβέω</td>
<td>to put to flight, terrify, frighten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οἶδα: to know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λέγω, ἔρω, ἔπισι: to say, call; mean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἤνεκα: for the sake of, for (+gen.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπεί: when, after; since, because</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Core Vocabulary

05 κύριος, -α, -ον: having power, in power over (gen.), 10
05 μάλλον: more, rather, 50
05 πρᾶξις, -εως, ἡ: action; transaction, 39
05 πῶς: how in what way?, 18
05 τίς, τί: who?, which?; why?, 29
06 ἀρχή, ἡ: origin, source; beginning, 19
06 ἐκαστος, -ης, -ου: each, every one, 33
06 πρῶτος, -ης, -ου: first, earliest, 10
06 τοιοῦτος, -αύτης, -ύτου: such, this sort, 73
06 ύπό: by, because of, (gen.), under, 22
06 ύπερ-βολὴ, ἡ: excess, 35
07 ἀπέ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 11
07 ἐλ-λεῖπω: to be deficient, fall short, lack, 19
07 ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, 40
07 θρασύς, -είς, -εύς: rash; overly bold, 10
07 μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 15
07 ὁλος: in general; entirely, 11
07 σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperance, prudence, 11
07 τε: and, both, 25
07 ύπερ-βάλλω: to exceed, overshoot, 22
07 ύπο-μένω: to endure, abide, remain, 20
07 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
08 ἐλ-λεῖψις, -εως, ἡ: deficiency, falling short, 30
08 μάλιστα: most of all; most certainly, especially 22
08 μεσοτης, -της, ἡ: the middle, mean, 34
08 πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 25
08 τις, τι: anyone, -thing, someone, -thing, 74
09 γε: at least, indeed, at any rate, 18
09 ἔργον, τό: function, task; deed, work, 11
09 καλός, -ης, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 33
09 λύπη, ἡ: pain, 25
09 λυπέω: to cause pain; mid. be in pain, 17
09 πως: somehow, in some/a certain way, 13
09 φημί: to say, claim, assert, 12
09 φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, dreadful 15
09 χαίρω: to rejoice in, enjoy (dat); greet, 23
09 ως: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 61
10 ἐναντίος, -α, -ου: opposite, contrary, 14
10 ὅτε: when, at some time, 15
10 πάθος, -εος, τό: feeling, passion, 21
11 αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 19
11 ἄπλως: simply; without qualification, 11
11 εἰς: into, to, in regard to (acc.), 12
11 ἡδος, -είς, -ύ: pleasant; sweet, 29
11 κακία, ἡ: vice, wickedness, cowardice, 14
11 λυπηρός, -ῆ, -όν: painful, 14
12 θυμός, ὁ: anger, passion, spirit, 19
12 φαίνω: show; mid. appear, seem, 32
12 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harsh, 12
13 ἔαν: εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 12
14 ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, them-, 23
14 προ-αἱρέωμαι: to choose, 15
17 ἐπαινεῖα: to praise, approve, commend, 11
17 ὀργίζω: to make angry; mid. be angry, 10
18 πάσχω: to suffer; allow, experience, 12
18 προ-αἱρεσις, -εως, ἡ: choice, 22
20 ἄκρος, -η, -όν: topmost, extreme, 13
20 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle (of), mean, 43
21 αἰρέω: to seize, take; mid. choose, 10
21 ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 15
22 ἐπ-θυμεῖα: to desire, long for (gen.), 11
24 ἐνοί, -αι, -α: some, 11
27 ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: intemperance, licentiousness 11
27 τυγχάνω: to chance upon, attain; happen, 13
36 δοκεῖ: to seem (good); think, decide, 40
36 ἐπερος, -ας, -ον: other, different, 13
41 ἀκούσια, ἡ: involuntary behavior, 10
42 ἀγνοια, ἡ: ignorance, 14
42 ἐκοικα: to seem, be like, seem likely, (dat.), 18
43 ἀκοῦσιος, -ου: voluntary; willing, 27
43 τέλος, -εος, τό: end; motive, 29
47 ἀγνοεῖα: be ignorant of, be in ignorance, 15
47 βούλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 10
55 βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 13
72 θάνατος, -ου: mortal, 10
73 κίνδυνος, ὁ: danger, risk, venture, 10
1. Διττῆς δὴ τῆς ἄρετῆς οὖσης, τῆς μὲν διανοητικῆς τῆς δὲ ἡθικῆς, ἡ μὲν διανοητικὴ τὸ πλείον ἐκ διδασκαλίας ἔχει καὶ τὴν γένεσιν καὶ τὴν αὔξησιν, διόπερ ἐμπερίας δεῖται καὶ χρόνου, ἡ δ’ ἡθικὴ ἐξ ἔθους περιγύνεται, ὠθεὶ καὶ τοῦνομα ἐσχήκε μικρὸν παρεκκλίνων ἀπὸ τοῦ ἔθους. ἐξ οὗ καὶ δῆλον ὅτι οὐδὲμα τῶν ἡθικῶν ἄρετῶν φύει ἦμων ἐγγύνεται· οὔθεν γὰρ τῶν φύει ὄντων ἄλλως ἐδίξεται, οἷον ὁ λίθος φύει κάτω φερόμενος οὐκ ἂν ἐφισθεὶν ἄνω φέρεσθαι, οὐδ’ ἂν με-ηριάκις αὐτὸν ἐθίζης τις ἄνω ῥητῶν, οὐδὲ τὸ πῦρ κάτω, οὐδ’ ἡθικὸς, -ῆ, -όν: ethical, moral, 6 κάτῳ: downwards, below, beneath, 2 λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 3 μυριάκις: ten thousand or countless times, 1 δ—θεν: for which reason; from where, 7 ὄνομα, -ατος, τὸ: name, 6 παρεκκλίνω: deviate, turn aside, 1 περι-γίγνομαι: to be a result; prevail over, 2 πῦρ, πυρός, τὸ: fire, 1 ρίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6 χρόνος, ὁ: time, 3

from the stem ἔθ- in ἔθος
dῆλον (ἔστιν) ὅτι: (it is) clear that...; or simply ‘clearly,’ a common impersonal construction with ind. disc.
19 φύσει: by nature; dat. of respect, φύσις ἠμῶν: in...; dat. of compound verb, ἡμεῖς ὀὐδέν: variation of οὐδὲν
20 τῶν...οὖτων: of what is...; ‘of the things being,’ pres. pple
ὀλον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort,’ common acc. of respect
21 φερόμενος: pres. pass.; i.e. borne along;
ἂν ἐφισθεὶν: would be...; potential opt. 3s aor. pass. opt. ἐβίζω + pass. inf.
οὐδὲ (ἐδ)ἀν...ἐβίζῃ τὶς: not even (if) someone (tries to) train it; contracted ἐαν; ἄν + 3s pres. subj.
22 ἄνω ρητῶν: by...; causal pres. pple
οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ: nor (if)...nor (if)...; ellipsis
ἀλλο οὖδὲν τῶν ἀλλως πειφύκτων ἄλλως ἀν ἐθωσεῖν. οὔτε ἀρα φίσει οὔτε παρὰ φύσιν ἐγγύνονται αἱ ἄρεται, ἀλλὰ πειφύκσαι μὲν ἡμῖν δέξασθαι αὐτάς, τελεσμένοις δὲ διὰ τοῦ εἴδους. ἥτι διὰ μὲν φύσει ἡμῖν παραγίνεται, τὰς δυνάμεις τοῦτων πρότερον κομιζόμεθα, ὅστερον δὲ τὰς ἐνεργείας ἀποδίδομεν (ὅπερ ἐπὶ τῶν αἰσθήσεων δῆλον· οὐ γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ πολλάκις ἰδεῖν ἢ πολλάκις ἀκούσαι τὰς αἰσθήσεις ἕλαβομεν, ἀλλ’ ἀνάπαλιν ἔχουσεν ἐχρησάμεθα, οὐ χρησάμενοι ἕσχομεν). τὰς δ’ ἄρετας λαμβάνομεν ἐνεργήσαντες πρότερον, ὅσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων τεχνῶν· ἢ γὰρ δεὶ μαθόντας ποιεῖν, ταῦτα ποιοῦντες μαθάνομεν, οἷον οἰκοδομοῦντες οἰκοδόμοι γίνονται καὶ κιθαρίζοντες κιθαρίσται· οὔτω δὴ καὶ τὰ
Moral Virtue is Acquired by Habit (II.1) 1103b

μὲν δίκαια πράττοντες δίκαιοι γυνόμεθα, τὰ δὲ σωφρόνες, τὰ δὲ ἀνδρεία ἀνδρεῖοι. μαρτυρεῖ δὲ καὶ τὸ γυνόμενον ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν οἱ γὰρ νομοθέται τῶν πολιτῶν ἐδίκαιες ποιούσιν ἅγαθος, καὶ τὸ μὲν βουλημα παντὸς νομοθέτου τοῦτ᾽ ἐστίν, ὥσοι δὲ μὴ εὖ αὐτῷ ποιοῦσιν ἀμαρτάνουσιν, καὶ διαφέρει τὸ τούτῳ πολιτεία πολιτείας ἀγαθὴ φαύλης. ἔτι ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ γίνεται πάσα ἁρετή καὶ φθείρεται, ὡμοίως δὲ καὶ τέχνη ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ κιθαρίζειν καὶ οἱ ἄγαθοι καὶ κακοὶ γίνονται κιβαρισταί. ἀνάλογον δὲ καὶ οἰκοδόμοι καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ πάντες ἐκ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ εὖ οἰκοδομεῖν ἅγαθοι οἰκοδόμοι ἑσονται, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ κακῶς κακοὶ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ὦτως ἔξεχεν, οὐδὲν ἄν ἔδει τοῦ διδάκτουν,

ἀνά-λογος, -ου: proportionate, analogous, 2
βουλημα, -ατος τό: wish, intent, aim, 1
διάδοχος: to teach, instruct, 1
ἐθίζων: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
κακος: poorly, badly, 6
κιβαρίζω: to play the cithara, 2
κιβαριστής, -ου, ό: cithara-player, 2

1 τὰ...δίκαια: just things; acc. pl. substantive
2 τὰ δὲ σωφρόνες (πράττοντες) σωφρόνες (γυνόμεθα): ellipsis, supply the verbs
3 πόλεσιν: dat. pl. πόλις
4 ποιούσιν: make (x) (y); ποιέω governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and pred.)
5 τοῦτο: subject: i.e. making citizens good
6 τοῦτω: because of...; dat. of cause
7 τῶν αὐτῶν: αὐτὸς in the attributive position (after an article) means ‘the same’
8 καὶ γίνεται...καὶ...: both...and...
9 νομοθέτης, -ου: lawgiver, 2
10 οἰκό-δομείω: to build, build a house, 2
11 κιβαρίζειν: articular inf. (translate: -ing)
12 καὶ οἱ ἄγαθοι...κιβαρισταί: all nom. subject
13 ἀνάλογον: by analogy; adv.: adverbial acc.
14 καὶ οἰκοδομεῖ...γίνονται: add verb
15 εἰ σουταν: 3p fut. εἰμί (ἐσομαι)
16 εἰ δὲ τοῦ κακῶς (οἰκοδομείν) κακοί
17 ἐσονται: ellipsis, supply verbs from above
18 εἰ...έχειν, ἄν ἔδει: if it were;...would; contrary to fact (εἰ impf., ἄν + impf. ind.)
19 εἰ...έχειν: if it were so; ‘were disposed thus,’ ἔχω (‘be disposed’ or ‘holds’) + adv. is often translated as εἰμί + pred.; impf. ἔχω
20 οὐδέν: not at all: inner acc., ‘be no need’
21 έδει: there would be a need for; + gen. of separation, i.e. ‘there would be a lack from’

3rd decl. nouns such as fem. φύσις, Gen. φύσεως, Dat. φύσε-ι, Acc. φύσιν
and neuter ἔθος are common and their case endings should be reviewed and memorized.
ἀλλὰ πάντες ἂν ἐγίνοντο ἄγαθοὶ ἡ κακοὶ. οὗτοι δὴ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀρετῶν ἔχει· πράττοντες γὰρ τὰ ἐν τοῖς συναλλάγμασι
toῖς πρὸς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους γνώμεθα οἱ μὲν δίκαιοι οἱ δὲ ἀδικοὶ, πράττοντες δὲ τὰ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς καὶ ἑδιξόμενοι φοβεῖ-
σθαι ἢ θαρρεῖν οἱ μὲν ἀνδρεῖοι οἱ δὲ δειλοὶ. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
tὰ περὶ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας ἔχει καὶ τὰ περὶ τὰς ὁργάς· οἱ μὲν
gὰρ σώφρονες καὶ πρᾶοι γίνονται, οἱ δὲ ἀκόλαστοι καὶ ὀργ-
γίλοι, οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ ὀυτωσὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ἀναστρέφεσθαι, οἱ δὲ
ἐκ τοῦ ὀυτωσὶ. καὶ ἐπὶ δὴ λόγῳ ἐκ τῶν ὁμοίων ἐνεργεῖων αἱ
ξέες γίνονται. διὸ δὲ τὰς ἐνεργείας ποιᾶς ἀποδιδόναι·
catat γὰρ τὰς τοῦτων διαφορὰς ἀκολουθοῦσιν αἱ ἡξεις. οὐ
μικρὸν οὖν διαφέρει τὸ ὀυτῶς ἢ ὀυτῶς εὐθὺς ἐκ νέων ἑξίζεσθαι,
2. Ἐπεί οὖν ἡ παροῦσα πραγματεία οὐ θεωρίας ἐνεκά ἐστιν ὁπέστα ἀι ἀλλαί (οὐ γὰρ ἰνα εἰδῶμεν τί ἔστιν ἡ ἀρετὴ σκεπτόμεθα, ἀλλ’ ἵν έγαθοι γενώμεθα, ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἐν ἰν ὄφελος αὐτῆς), ἀναγκαῖον ἐπισκέψασθαι τὰ περὶ τὰς πράξεις, πῶς πρακτέοι αὐτὰς· αὐτὰς γὰρ εἰσὶ κύριαι καὶ τοῦ ποιῶς γενέσθαι τὰς ἔξεις, καθάπερ εἰρήκαμεν. ὥς μὲν ὦν κατὰ τὸν ὦρθὸν λόγον πράττειν κοινὸν καὶ ὑποκείσθω—ῥήησεται δ’ ὀστερον περὶ αὐτοῦ, καὶ τί ἔστιν ὁ ὦρθὸς λόγος, καὶ πῶς ἔχει πρὸς τὰς ἀλλὰς ἀρετὰς. ἐκεῖνο δὲ προδιο—

25 πάμπολυ: a very great (difference); inner acc. parallel to μικρὸν

26 παροῦσα: present; pres. pple.

27 ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine in addition, 1 theoria; ἤ: speculation, contemplation, 1 ὡς: in order that, so that (subj.); where, 3 καθ-ἀπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6 κοινός, ἤ-ον: common(place); public, 7 ὦρθος, ἤ-ον: straight, upright, right, right, 6 ὄφελος, ὦ: help, use, benefit, 1

28 ἰν(α)...γενώμεθα: so that...may...; purpose clause with 1p aor. subj. ὀρᾷ ὑπὲρ...ἡ ἀρετὴ: ind. question governed by εἰδῶμεν, not σκεπτόμεθα

29 ἰν(α)...γενώμεθα: so that...may...; purpose clause with 1p aor. subj. ἐπεὶ: since...; causal ἀν ᾗ: would...; ἀν: impf. indicative εἰμὶ expresses unreal potential (contrary to fact)

29 ἀναγκαίον (ἐστίν): (it is)...; impersonal ἐπὶ περὶ...πράξεις: matters regarding actions

30 πρακτέοι (ἐστίν) αὐτὰς: (we must) accomplish them; (it is) to be accomplished (by us)* impersonal verbal adj. (τέου) + εἰμὶ expressing necessity, often translated actively; αὐτὰς is the acc. obj. (S2152)

31 τοῦ...γενέσθαι...: of...becoming...; articular inf. in gen. with acc. subj. and pred. εἰρήκαμεν: 1p pf. λέγω; see 1103b20-21 τὸ...πράττειν (ἐστίν) κοινὸν: to act...(is)...; this articular inf. is subject; Aristotle is setting up τὸ...πράττειν as a common rule

32 ὑποκείσθω: let...be assumed; ‘let...be set down,’ 3s pres. mid. imperative; Aristotle will assume this principle for the discussion ῥήησεται: it will...; fut. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω) αὐτοῦ refers to τὸ πράττειν above

33 ὀστερον: adv. acc.

34 καί...καί...: both...and...; the two ind. questions are in apposition to περὶ αὐτοῦ ἔξω: it is; ‘is disposed’ or ‘holds’ + adv. πρὸς: in regard to...
μολογείσθω, ὅτι πάς ὁ περὶ τῶν πρακτῶν λόγος τύπῳ καὶ οὐκ ἀκριβῶς ὀφείλει λέγεσθαι, ὡσπερ καὶ κατʼ ἀρχὰς εἶπομεν ὅτι κατὰ τὴν υλὴν οἱ λόγοι ἀπατητέων· τὰ δὲ ἐν ταῖς πράξει καὶ τὰ συμφέροντα οὐδὲν ἐστικὸς ἔχει, ὡσπερ οὐδὲ τὰ ύψινα. τοιούτου δὲ ὄντος τοῦ καθόλου λόγου, ἐτί μᾶλλον ὁ περὶ τῶν καθ’ ἐκαστα λόγος οὐκ ἔχει τάκριβες· οὔτε γὰρ υπὸ τέχνην οὐθέν ὑπὸ παραγελίαν οὐδεμιάν πίστει, δέι δὲ αὐτοῦς ἄλλως πράττοντας τὰ πρὸς τὸν καθόλον σκοπεῖν, ὡσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἰατρικῆς ἔχει καὶ τῆς κυβερνητικῆς. ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ὄντος τοιούτου τοῦ παρόντος λόγου πειρατεῖον βοηθεῖν. πρῶτον οὖν τοῦτο θεωρητεῖν, ὅτι τὰ τοιαύτα πέφυκεν ὑπ’ ἐνεδίας καὶ ὑπερβολῆς φθεῖρα -

ἀεί: always, forever, in every case, 6
ἀκριβῆς,-ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
ἀκριβῶς: exactly, accurately, precisely, 1
ἀπ-αιτητέως, -ον: to be demanded/required, 1
βοηθέω: to help, come to aid, assist, 1
ἐν-δεία, ἦ: lack, want, 3
θεωρητέος, -ου: to be considered/looked at, 1
ἰατρική, ἦ: the art of medicine, 2
ἰστήμη: to make stand, set; stand, stop, 1
καθόλου: on the whole, in general, 4
καὶ-περ: although, 2
καιρός, ὁ: (right) moment, occasion, time, 3
κυβερνητική, ἦ: navigation, art of steering, 2
ὀφείλω: to owe, ought + inf., 1

1 ὅτι: (namely) that; in apposition to ἐκείνο τοῦτο: in...; dat. of manner
2 κατʼ ἀρχὰς: in...; in N.E. I.3
3 εἴπομεν: aor. λέγω
ἀπατητέοι (είπον): must be...; ‘(are) to be required (by us)’ verbal adj. (τέος) + missing εἰμί expressing necessity
τὰ...: matters regarding...; πράξεις here is synonymous with πρακτὰ above
4 τὰ συμφέροντα: what is expedient; ‘things being expedient,’ the second nom. subj.
οὐδὲν ἐστικὸς: nothing fixed; acc. obj.; neut. acc. sg. pf. pple ἵστημι
5 οὐδέ: also not; adv., equiv. to καὶ οὐ
τὰ ύψινα: matters of...
τοιούτου...λόγου: if...; i.e ὁ περὶ τῶν πρακτῶν λόγος above is not exact; gen.
παρ-αγγελία, ἦ: formal instruction, order, 1
πά-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 2
πειρατεῖος, -α, -ου: to be attempted, 2
πίπτω: to fall, 1
πρακτά, τά: things to be done; matters of moral actions, 4
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
συμ-φέρων, -οντος: expedient, useful, 4
συμ-φέρω: gather, be useful, be expedient, 1
τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5
ὑπερβολῆς, -ῆς, -ον: sound, healthy, wholesome, 2
ὑλή, ἦ: subject matter, matter; woods, 2
φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

abs. conditional in sense; pres. pple of εἰμί
6 ἐτὶ μᾶλλον: still more...
7 τὰ καθ’ ἐκαστα: the particulars; ‘those each by each,’ in contrast to καθόλου
τὸ (δ) ἀκριβῆς: accuracy; acc. sg. substantive
8 ὑπό: under...; i.e. under the power of...
9 ὑπέρ: above...
10 αὐτοῖς: themselves; intensive pronoun
τοὺς πράττοντας: those...; acc. subj.
τὰ πρόδος:... matters regarding...
11 πειρατέον (ἐστὶν): we must...; ‘it is (to be)...(by us)’ impersonal verbal adj.
θεωρητέον (ἐστὶν): neuter τοῦτο is subject
ὅτι: (namely) that...; in apposition to τοῦτο
12 πέφυκεν: are disposed by nature + inf.; ‘have grown by nature,’ pf. with 3p subject
Moral Actions must Avoid Excess and Defect (II.2)

14 ἐπὶ: in the case of...
15 τά... ἐλλειπόντα (γυμνάσια): add noun
πλείον... ἐλάττων: πλείον(α) ἐλάττων(α) neuter pl. predicates of pple γυμνέαν
tά σύμμετρα: i.e. τά ποτά and τά στίχα
18 καὶ ποιεῖ... σφόδρα: add τήν ὑγίαν as obj.
the three καὶ join the three verbs (the first may be left untranslated)
19 ἐπὶ...: in the case of...
τῶν ἄλλων ἀρετῶν: also object of ἐπί
20 ὁ... φεύγων: the one avoiding...; the article ὁ receives its acute accent from τὲ
μὴ δὲν ὑπομένων: not at all standing their

"Ground; ‘enduring nothing,’ ὑπομένω can mean ‘stand one’s ground’ or ‘abide or endure;’ μὴ is used instead of οὗ throughout because the pples are conditional (S2728)"
τις' φθείρεται δή σωφροσύνη καὶ ἡ ἀνδρεία ὑπὸ τῆς ὑπερβολῆς καὶ τῆς ἐλλεύσεως, ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς μεσότητος σφώ- λζει. ἀλλ' οὐ μόνον αἱ γενέσεις καὶ αὐξήσεις καὶ αἱ φθοράι ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν γίνονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ αἱ ἐνέργειαι ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἔσονται καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων τῶν φανερότερων οὗτος ἔχει, οἶνον ἐπὶ τῆς ἱσχύος· γίνεται γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ πολλῆς τροφῆς λαμβάνειν καὶ πολλοῦς πόνους ὑπομένειν, καὶ μάλιστα ἄν δύναιτ' αὐτὰ ποιεῖν ὁ ἱσχυρός. οὕτω δ' ἔχει καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄρετων· ἐκ ταῖς ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν ἣδονῶν γνώμεθα σώφρονες, καὶ γενόμενοι μάλιστα δυνάμεθα ἀπέχεσθαι αὐτῶν· ὁμοίως δὲ

αὐξήσεις, -εως, ἡ: increase, development, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: beginning, generation, 3
dύναμις: to be able, can, be capable, 9
ἐν-ἐργεῖα, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
ἰσχυρός, -α, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 1
ἰσχύς, ἰσχύος ὁ: strength, power, force, 3
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4
πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 2
σοφίζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
tροφή, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 3
φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5
φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8
φθορά, ἡ: disaster, destruction, 2

25 φθείρεται: pass. governs a 3p subject
δη: accordingly, then; inferential δη
(ἡ) σωφροσύνη: the article ἡ is missing through crisis with the preceding δη (S62)
27 οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also...
tῶν αὐτῶν: αὐτός in the attributive position (after an article) means 'the same'
28 τοῖς αὐτοῖς: see above
ἔσονται: 3p fut. εἰμί
29 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact; καὶ is adverbial ἐπὶ...: in the case of...
30 φανερότερων: comparative degree
οὗτος ἔχει: it is so; ἔχω + adv. is often translated as εἰμὶ + pred.
οἶνον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'
31 τοῦ...λαμβάνειν...-yyyy: articular inf. (-ing); ὑπομένειν here meaning 'abiding' or
'enduring' with an acc. obj.
32 ἐν δύναιτ(ο): would...; potential opt.
αὐτὰ: them; i.e. λαμβάνειν...-yyyy
33 ὁ ἱσχυρός: a strong man
οὕτω δ' ἔχει: it...; impersonal, see above
34 ἐκ τοῦ ἀπέχεσθαι: articular inf. (-ing)
tῶν ἠδονῶν: from...; gen. of separation
αὐτῶν: them; separation i.e. τῶν ἠδονῶν
Moral Virtue is concerned with Pleasure and Pain (II.3) 1104b

καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀνδρείας· ἑθιζόμενοι γὰρ καταφρονεῖν τῶν φοβηρῶν καὶ ὑπομένειν αὐτὰ γινόμεθα ἀνδρεῖοι, καὶ γενόμενοι μᾶλλον δυνησόμεθα ὑπομένειν τὰ φοβηρὰ. 3. Σημεῖον δὲ δεῖ ποιεῖσθαι τῶν ἐξεων τὴν ἐπιγυμνώμην ἦδον ἣ λύπην τοῖς ἔργοις· ὃ μὲν γὰρ ἀπεχόμενοι τῶν σωματικῶν ἢδονῶν καὶ αὐτῷ τούτῳ χαίρων σώφρων, ὃ δὲ ἀχόμενος ἀκόλαστος, καὶ ὃ μὲν ὑπομένων τὰ δεινὰ καὶ χαίρων ἢ μὴ λυπούμενος γε ἀνδρεῖος, ὃ δὲ λυπούμενος δειλός. περὶ ἢδονᾶς γὰρ καὶ λύπας ἔστιν ἡ θύκη ἄρετή· διὰ μὲν γὰρ τὴν ἦδον τὰ φαύλα πράττομεν, διὰ δὲ τὴν λύπην τῶν καλῶν ἀπεχόμεθα. διὸ δεῖ ἥχθαι πως εἴθως ἐκ νέων, ὡς ὁ Πλάτων φησίν, ὡστε χαίρειν τε καὶ λυπεῖσθαι οἷς δεῖ·

ἄγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3
ἄχθομαι: to be annoyed, vexed, 1
dεινός, -ῆ, -ον: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
dύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9
ἐθίζω: to acustom, habituate, train, 9
ἐπιγύμνουμαι: to come to be afterwards, 1
eὐθὺς, -εία, -ū: straight; adv. straight away, 3
ἡθικός, -ῆ, -ον: ethical, moral, 6

κατα-φρονέω: to think down upon, despise, 1

νέος, -α, -ον: young; new; subst. youth, 3
Πλάτων, ὁ: Plato, 1

μὴ λυπούμενος γε: at least not…; γε is restrictive; μὴ instead of οὐ because the participle is conditional (S2505)

ἀνδρεῖος (γυνηταί): nom. pred., add verb
dειλός (γυνηταί): nom. pred., add verb

τὰ φαύλα: base actions
tῶν καλῶν: gen. separation

ἡθική: (that these activities) be done; or ‘it be conducted’ inf. disc. with aor. pass. inf. ἄγω; supply an acc. subject
ἐκ νέων: from youths; i.e. from young age, see also II.1 (1103b23-25) above

ὦς…: as…; parenthetical. 3s pres. φησί

ὡςτε: so as to…; + inf., result clause

λυπεῖσθαι: pass. inf.

οἷς δεῖ (χαίρειν τε καὶ λυπεῖσθαι): by the things which we ought; ‘by which it is necessary’ relative clause with dat. pl. of means
The page contains a segment of the Nicomachean Ethics by Aristotle, discussing emotions and their treatment. The text is in Greek, with a few terms translated into Latin and English. The page contains a mix of direct quotes and explanations of Aristotle's views on emotions. Key terms include "κόλασις" (censure) and "μηνύω" (to inflict, make suffer). The page also discusses the treatment of emotions in education, with terms like "παιδεία" (education) and "σαχ" (soul). The page ends with a discussion on the nature of emotions, their definition, and their treatment, with terms like "φώς" (light) and "πεφύκασι" (are naturally disposed to).
και ἡρεμίας: οὐκ εὖ δέ, ὅτι ἀπλῶς λέγουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὑς δεῖ καὶ ὁς οὐ δεῖ καὶ ὅτε, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα προστίθεται. ὑπόκειται ἄρα ἡ ἄρετή εἶναι ἡ τοιαύτη περὶ ἡδονᾶς καὶ λύπας τῶν βελτίστων πρακτικῆς, ἡ δὲ κακία τοιαύταν. γένοιτο δ' ἂν ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκ τούτων φανερὸν ὅτι περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν. τριων γὰρ ὄντων τῶν εἰς τὰς αἰρέσεις καὶ τριῶν τῶν εἰς τὰς φυγάς, καλοῦ συμφέροντος ἡδεός, καὶ [τριῶν] τῶν ἑναντίων, ἀισχροῦ βλαβεροῦ λυπηροῦ, περὶ ταῦτα μὲν πάντα ὁ ἀγαθὸς κατορθωτικὸς ἔστιν ὁ δὲ κακὸς ἀμαρτητικός, μάλιστα δὲ περὶ τὴν ἡδονήν κοινῆ τε γὰρ αὕτη τοῖς ζῷοις, καὶ πάσι τοίς ὑπὸ τὴν αἴρεσιν παρακολουθεῖ·

25 οὐκ εὖ δέ (ὁρίζουσα): but (they define them) not well; supply verb ὅτι: because ἄλλα (ἄλλα) οὐχ... προστίθεται: but... are not added; in contrast to ἀπλῶς λέγουσιν 26 ὁς δεῖ... στε (δεῖ ὡς δεῖ)... ὅσα ἄλλα: all four in the series are the subject of 3s verb; see ll. 22-23 above for translation ὅσα ἄλλα: how many other things 27 εἶναι: inf. eiū governing πρατική as a pred. ἡ ἄρετή... ἡ τοιαύτη: this sort of virtue; i.e. moral virtue; nom. subj.; τοιαύτη modifies ἄρετή 28 πρακτική: able to effect + objective gen. ἡ κακία: vice; ellipsis: assume the verb from above τὸ (τὸ) ἑναντίον: the contrary; crisis 29 γένοιτο... αὐτῶν: and from the following things also it might be clear that (virtue and vice are) concerning the same things; i.e concerning pleasure and pain; aor. potential opt.; add a subject and verb after ὅτι 30 τριῶν... αἴρεσις: gen. abs. with pres. pple eiū εἰς: in regard to... τριῶν (鋈ντου) φυγάς: gen. abs., add pple 31 καλοῦ συμφέροντος ἡδεός: (namely) the noble, the expedient, (and) the pleasant; gen. in apposition to τριῶν εἰς τὰ αἴρεσις 32 αἰσχροῦ βλαβεροῦ λυπηροῦ: the... the... (and) the...; in apposition to τῶν ἑναντίων 33 ὁ ἀγαθὸς: the good (man) πεπόνθατε: experience; perfect πασχω ὁ κακὸς (ἐστί): the bad (man) 34 μᾶλιστα: especially; ‘very greatly’ αὕτη (ἐστί): this (is)...; add linking verb; αὕτη refers to ἡδονή 35 τοῖς ζῷοις: for...; dat. of interest πᾶσι: alongside all things; neut. dat. pl. of compound verb, πᾶς ὑπὸ τὴν αἴρεσιν: under the power of...; prepositional phrase in attributive position modifying πᾶσι

1104b

Moral Virtue is concerned with Pleasure and Pain (II.3)
καὶ γὰρ τὸ καλὸν καὶ τὸ συμφέρον ἡδὺ φαίνεται. ἔτι δ’ ἐκ νηπίου πάσων ἡμῶν συντεθραμμένος διὸ χαλεπῶν ἀποτρίψαθαι τοῦτο τὸ πάθος ἐγκεκρωσμένον τῷ βίῳ. κανονίζομεν δὲ καὶ τὰς πράξεις, οἱ μὲν μᾶλλον οἱ δὲ ἢπτον, ἡδονή καὶ λύπη. διὰ τούτου οὖν ἄναγκα εἶναι περὶ ταῦτα τὴν πάσαν πραγματείαν οὐ γὰρ μικρὸν εἰς τὰς πράξεις εἰ ἡ κακῶς χαίρει καὶ λυπεῖσθαι. ἔτι δὲ χαλεπώτερον ἡδονή μάχεσθαι ἢ θυμός, καθάπερ φησὶν Ἡράκλειτος, περὶ δὲ τὸ χαλεπώτερον ἀεὶ καὶ τέχνη γίνεται καὶ ἀρετῆ καὶ γὰρ τὸ εὖ βέλτιον ἐν τούτῳ. ὡς τε καὶ διὰ τούτου περὶ ἡδωνᾶς καὶ λύπας πᾶσα ἡ πραγματεία καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ τῇ πολιτικῇ ὁ μὲν γὰρ εἰς τούτοις χρώμενος ἁγαθὸς ἐσται,
ο δε κακως κακως. οτι μεν ον στιν η αρετη περι ηδονας και λυπας, και οτι εξ ου γινεται, υπο τοτων και αυξε- ται και φθειρεται μη ωσαυτως γυμνομενων, και οτι εξ ουν εγενετο, περι ταυτα και ενεργεια, ειρησων.

4. Απορησεις ει αν τις πως λεγομεν οτι δει τα μεν δικαια πραττοντας δικαιους γυνεσαι, τα δε σωφρονα σωφρονας ει γαρ πραττοντας τα δικαια και σωφρονα, ήη εισι δικαιοι και σωφρονειες, ουσπερ ει τα γραμματικα και τα μουσικα, γραμματικοι και μουσικοι. ή ουδ επι των τεχνων ουτως ξεχει, ενεδεχεται γαρ γραμματικων τι ποιησαι και απο τυχης και αλλου υποθεμενου. τοτε ονυν εσται γραμματικος, εναι και γραμματικων τι ποιηση και

ά-πορεω: to be at a loss; be perplexed, 1
αυξανο (αυξω): to increase, enrich, 3
γραμματικος, -η, -ον: grammatical, of grammar, 3
γραμματικος, ο: grammarian, scholar, 2
εν-δεχομαι: to be possible; admit, allow, 1
εν-εργος: to be active, actualize, operate, 5
ηδη: already, now, at this time, 4

13 ο δε κακως (τουτος χρωμενως): ellipsis
κακως (εσται): predicate; supply a verb
οτι...οτι...οτι...: that...that...that...
οτοτων: the antecedent
υπο τοτων: by these (actions); gen. of agent or cause
και αυξεται και φθειρεται: both... and...
και αυξεται και φθειρεται: both... and...

15 μυ ωσαυτως γυμνομενων: (if) not coming to be in the same way; a participial phrase conditional in sense (hence μυ, not ου) and modifying τοτων; the verb φθειρεται is the logical apodosis
ενεργεια: assume η αρετη as subject
ειρησων: let it be said; 3s pf. pass.
imperative λεγω (επει) governing the preceding οτι clauses

17 Απορησεις ει αν: might be...; 3s aor.
potential opt.

κακως: poorly, badly, 6
μουσικος, -η, -ον: musical, of music, 1
μουσικος, ο: musician; educated man, 1
tοτε: then, at that time, 3
tυχη, η: chance, luck, fortune, 3
υπο-τιθει: to set up, suppose, propose, 1
φθειρα: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8
ως-αυτος: in the same manner, just so, 2

πως λεγομεν: what we mean...; ‘in what sense we are saying,’ this is a common translation of λεγομεν with πως
τα...πραττοντας...γυνεσαι: that (those)...
οτοτων: the antecedent
νεργε: by these (actions); gen. of
agent or cause
γραμματικῶς: τούτο δ’ ἑστὶ τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἐν αὐτῷ γραμματικὴν. ἢτι οὐδ’ ὁμοίων ἑστὶ τετεὶ τε τῶν τεχνῶν καὶ τῶν ἀρετῶν’ τὰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν τεχνῶν γνώμενα τὸ εὔ ἔχει ἐν αὐτοῖς: ἀρκεῖ οὖν ταύτα πως ἔχοντα γενέσθαι’ τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὰς ἁρετὰς γνώμενα οὐκ ἐὰν αὐτά πως ἔχῃ, δι-καίως ἢ σωφρόνως πράττεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐὰν ὁ πρᾶττων πως ἔχων πράττῃ, πρῶτον μὲν ἐὰν εἰδῶς, ἢπειτ’ ἐὰν προαιρούμενο, καὶ προαιρούμενος δι’ αὐτὰ, τὸ δὲ τρίτον ἐὰν καὶ βεβαιῶς καὶ ἀμετακινήτως ἔχων πράττῃ. Ταύτα δὲ πρὸς

ά-μετακινήτως, -ον: immoveable, unmoved, 1 ἀρκεῖον: suffice, be enough; pass. be satisfied, 2 βεβαίως: steadfastly, firmly, steadily, 1 γραμματική: grammatical art/knowledge, 1 γραμματικὸς: grammatically, 1

25 καὶ γραμματικῶς (ποίησι): and (he does it)…; add the verb τούτω: i.e. γραμματικῶς; Aristotle is explaining what he means when he uses the adverb γραμματικῶς

τὸ κατὰ…γραμματικὴν: “according to…” the article makes the prepositional phrase that follows a substantive (S1153), in this case equivalent to the use of quotation marks in English ἐν (ἐ)αυτῷ: in himself; reflexive

26 οὖδ’(δ): and…not; οὐ δὲ ὁμοίων ἑστιν: it is not…; impersonal ἐπὶ…: in the case of…

27 τὰ…γνώμενα: the things…; i.e. the works of art τὸ εὖ: (their) good; acc. obj. ὑπὸ…: because of…; gen. of cause ἐν (ἐ)αυτῷ: reflexive

28 ἀρκεῖ: it is enough; impersonal ταύτα…γενέσθαι: that…; ind. disc; ταύτα is acc. subj. πως ἔχοντα: nom. pred.; ἔχω (‘be disposed’) + adv. is translated as εἰσι + pred. τὰ…γνώμενα: but the things…; i.e. the

dικαίως: justly, rightly, lawfully, fairly, 3 ἐπειτα: then, next, secondly, 1 ὑμοίος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7 σωφρόνως: temperately, moderately, 1 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 1

actions; neut. pl. subject of two 3s verbs

29 κατὰ: in accordance with…

οὐκ ἐὰν…ἔχῃ…πράττεται: not if…, a pres. general condition (ἐὰν + subj., pres.) with 3s pres. subj. and pres. pass.; for πῶς ἔχῃ see above

αὐτά: reflexive pronoun with τὰ γνώμενα

30 ἀλλὰ καὶ εὰν. πράττῃ: but in fact if…; 3s pres subj. πράττω in a pres. general condition in contrast to οὐκ ἐὰν…ἔχῃ above; as assume δικαίως…πράττεται as the apodosis

31 πῶς ἔχον: i.e. a certain state of mind πρῶτων μὲν…ἐπειτα(α)…τὸ δὲ τρίτον: first…then…thirdly…; a series of protaseis elaborating the meaning of πῶς ἔχον εἰδῶς: nom. sg. pf. oίδα: translate pres.; assume πράττῃ as the verb

32 δι(α) αὐτά: on account of themselves; i.e. actions for their own sake καὶ…καὶ: both…and...

33 ἔχον: see note on line 28 ταύτα: these; i.e. the conditions just listed πρὸς: in relation to…
Analogy between Moral Virtue and the Arts (II.4)

μὲν τὸ τὰς ἄλλας τέχνας ἔχειν οὐ συναρθεμένα, πλὴν αὐτὸ τὸ εἰδέναι· πρὸς δὲ τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς τὸ μὲν εἰδέναι οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν ἵσχύει, τὰ δ’ ἄλλα οὐ μικρὸν ἄλλα τὸ πάν δύναται, ἀπερ ἐκ τοῦ πολλάκις πράττειν τὰ δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα περιγίνεται. τὰ μὲν οὐ πράγματα δίκαια καὶ σῶφρονα λέγεται, ὅταν ἦ τουαῦτα οἶα ἄν ὁ δίκαιος ἢ ὁ σώφρων πράξειν, δίκαιος δὲ καὶ σώφρων ἑστὶν οὐχ ὁ ταῦτα πράττων, ἄλλα καὶ [ὁ] οὐτὶ πράττον ὁς οἱ δίκαιοι καὶ σῶφρονες πράττουσιν. εὖ οὖν λέγεται ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ τὰ δίκαια πράττειν ὁ δίκαιος γίνεται καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τὰ σώφρονα ὁ σώφρων εὖ δὲ τοῦ μὴ πράττειν ταῦτα οὔδείς ἄν οὐδὲ μελλήσει γίνεσθαι ἀγαθός. ἄλλ’ οἱ πολλοὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὐ πράττουν-

δύναμι: be able, can, be powerful/capable, 9
ἰσχύο: to be strong, be powerful, prevail, 2
μέλλω: be likely, intend, be about to (inf.), 2
δοπερ, ἡτερ, δοτερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
ὁταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7

1 τὸ...ἔχειν: articular inf. (-ing)
συναρθεμένα: 3s pres. pass. with neut. pl. subject
2 αὐτό: reflexive
τὸ εἰδέναι: articular inf. (-ing), οἴδα
πρὸς...τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς (ἔχειν): but...; a strong contrast; supply ἔχειν to this articular inf.
τὸ μὲν εἰδέναι: nom. subj.
οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν: not at all...; adv. acc. (inner accusatives)
3 τὰ ἄλλα: the other things
οὐ μικρὸν ἄλλα τὰ πάν: adv. accusatives (inner acc.) with δύναται
4 δύναται: are powerful; assume πρὸς τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἔχειν from line 2
ἀπερ...περιγίνεται: which very things...; relative clause: ἀπερ is the obj. of the articular inf. τὸ πράττειν
5 δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα: nom. pred.
λέγεται (ἔλνα): linking verb with 3p subject
6 ὅταν ἢ: whenever they are...; general temporal clause with 3s pres. subj. εἰμί with neut. pl. subject
περιγίνεται: to be a result; prevail over, 2
πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 4
πράγμα, ἀστο τὸ: deed, act; matter, affair, 7
συν-ἀριθμέω: to count up, take into account, 1

οἶα ἄν...πράξειν: would...; relative clause with 3s potential aor. subj. πράττω
7 δὲ: but; adversative
8 οὐχ...ἄλλα καὶ: not the one...but in fact the one...; καὶ is adverbal
οὕτω...ὡς: in this way...in which way...; correlatives; ὡς, ‘as’ or ‘in which way’ introduces a clause of comparison
9 λέγεται: it is...; impersonal construction ὅτι...: that...; ind. disc.
τοῦ πράττειν: articular inf. (-ing)
10 ἐκ τοῦ τὰ σώφρονα (πράττειν): add inf. οὐ σώφρων (γίνεται): add verb
11 ἐκ...πράττειν ταῦτα: without doing these things; the literal translation ‘from not doing these things’ is awkward; μὴ is used with all infs.—except in ind. disc. (S2702) οὐδείς...οὐδὲ: no one...even; οὐδὲ, ‘not even’ is positive after οὐδείς and modifies μελλήσει
ἄν...μελλήσει: would...; aor. potential opt.
12 οἱ πολλοὶ: many people; ‘the masses,’ i.e. people in general
συν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν λόγον καταφεύγουτες οἴνονται φιλοσοφεῖν καὶ οὕτως ἔσεσθαι σπουδαῖοι, ὁμοίων τι ποιοῦντες τοῖς κάμνουσιν, οἱ τῶν ἰατρῶν ἀκούσι μὲν ἐπιμελώς, ποιοῦσι δὲ οὐδὲν τῶν προστατομένων. ἄσπερ οὖν οὐδὲ ἐκεῖνοι εὔξουσι τὸ σῶμα οὕτω θεραπεύομενοι, οὐδὲ οὕτω τὴν ψυχὴν οὕτω φιλοσοφοῦντες.

5. μετὰ δὲ ταύτα τί ἔστω ἡ ἁρετὴ σκεπτέον. ἐπεὶ οὖν τὰ ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ γινόμενα τρία ἐστὶ, πάθη δυνάμεις έξεις, τούτων ἃν τι ἐη ἡ ἁρετή. λέγω δὲ πάθη μὲν ἐπιθυμίαν ὀργὴν φόβον θάρσος φθονὸν χαράν φιλίαν μίσος πόθον ξῆλον ἔλεον, ὅλως οἷς ἐπεται ἡδονή ἤ λύπη δυνάμεις δὲ καθὰ ὡς παθητικοί τούτων λεγόμεθα, οἷον καθὰ ὡς δυνατοί.

13 ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν λόγον καταφεύγουτε: taking refuge in words; 'fleeing to discourse'
14 ἔσεσθαι: and that (they)...; ind. disc., add the acc. subject; fut. inf. εἰς τοῖς κάμνουσιν: to (those)....; pres. pple., dat. of special adj. ὀμοίως
15 οἷς... who...: relative clause
16 τῶν ἰατρῶν: gen. of source after ἀκούσι
17 τῶν προστατομένων: of the (things)....; pres. pass. pple
18 οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ: not even...not even; adverbs εὔξουσι τὸ σῶμα: will be well in body; fut. ἐξωκαὶ adv., here with an acc. of respect
19 οἷς ἐπεται: (things) which...accompany; (λέγοντα) δυνάμεις...λεγόμεθα: (I mean) by capacities (that) in respect to which we are said to be capable of these (emotions)
20 οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'
21 καθ᾽ ὡς: in respect to which

σκεπτέον (ἐστίν): it must be...; 'it is to be considered;' impersonal verbal adj. (S2152)

5 ἀκούσι: to hear, listen to, 2
δύναμις,-εως, ἡ: ability, capacity, power, 5
ἐκάνως,-η,-ον: that, those, 8
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3
ἐπιμελώς: carefully, attentively, 1
ἐπομένα: to follow, accompany, escort, 3
ζήλος, ὁ: jealousy, rivalry, 1
θάρσος,-εος, ὁ: confidence, boldness, 1
θεραπεύω: to attend to, care for, 1
ἱατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3
κάμνω: to be sick, suffer illness, toil, 1
καταφεύγω: to flee, take refuge to, 1
μίσος, -εος, τὸ: hate, hatred, 1
οἴμαι (οἴμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5

5 ἀμιοίος, -αί, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7
ἀργυρίος, ἡ: anger, 3
παθητικός,-η,-ον: capable of emotion, 1
πόθος, ὁ: longing, yearning, 1
προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5
προστάτησις,-ος, -ον: to be examined/considered, 1
σπουδαῖος, -ας, -ον: good, earnest, 9
σώμα, -ατος, τὸ: the body, 7
τρία, τρία: three, 4
φθονός, ὁ: envy, 4
φιλία, ἡ: friendship, love, 2
φιλοσοφέω: philosophize, seek knowledge, 2
πάθη δυνάμεις έξεις, τούτων λεγόμεθα, οἷον καθ᾽ ὡς δυνατοί.
νατὸι όργιοσθῆναι ἢ λυπηθῆναι ἢ ἐλεῆσαι· ἐξεις δὲ καθ᾽ ἃς πρὸς τὰ πάθη ἔχομεν εὖ ἢ κακῶς, οἷον πρὸς τὸ όργιοσθῆναι, εἰ μὲν σφοδρῶς ἢ ἀνειμένως, κακῶς ἔχομεν, εἰ δὲ μέσως, εὖ· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰλλα. πάθη μὲν οὖν οὐκ εἰσὶν οὖθ᾽ αἱ ἄρεται οὖθ᾽ αἱ κακίαι, ὅτι οὐ λεγόμεθα κατὰ τὰ πάθη σπουδαῖοι ἡ φαύλῳ, κατὰ δὲ τὰς ἄρετὰς καὶ τὰς κακίας λεγόμεθα, καὶ ὅτι κατὰ μὲν τὰ πάθη οὖν ἐπανούμεθα οὕτε ψευδόμεθα (οὐ γὰρ ἐπινεώταί ὁ φοβούμενος οὐδὲ ὁ όργιομενος, οὐδὲ ψέγεται ὁ ἀπλῶς όργιομενος...
δύνα τοῦ ἐμπειροῦντος, αὐτῶς τὴν καρδίαν. ἦν δὲ τὰς ἀρετὰς καὶ τὰς κακίας ἐπαινοῦμεθα ἢ ψηγόμεθα. ἐτι ὁργιζόμεθα μὲν καὶ φοβοῦμεθα ἀπροαίρετως, αἰ δὲ ἀρεταὶ προαίρεσεις τυνές ἢ οὐκ ἄνευ προαίρεσεως. πρὸς δὲ τοῦτοι κατὰ μὲν τὰ πάθη κινεῖσθαι λεγόμεθα, κατὰ δὲ τὰς ἀρετὰς καὶ τὰς κακίας οὐ κινεῖσθαι ἀλλὰ διακεῖσθαι πως. διὰ ταύτα δὲ οὔδε δυνάμεις εἰσών ὅπερ ἑγαθοὶ λεγόμεθα τῷ δύνασθαι πάσχειν ἀπλῶς ὅπερ κακοὶ, οὐτ' ἐπαινοῦμεθα οὔτε ψηγόμεθα· ἐτι δυνατοὶ μὲν ἐςμεν φύσει, ἑκάθοι δὲ ἢ κακοὶ οὐ γνώμεθα φύσει οἴπομεν δὲ περὶ τοῦτον πρότερον. εἰ οὖν μὴ τάθε εἰσών αἰ ἀρετάλα μήτε δυνάμεις, λείπεται έξεις αὐτῶς εἶναι. ὃ τι μὲν οὖν ἐστὶ τῷ γένει ἢ ἀρετή,
6. Υἱὸς, ἀνθρωπός, ‘a person,’ as subject

renders it's function well; i.e. makes it execute it's function or task successfully

15 ὁ των: for example; ‘in respect to which’

16 αὐτό...ἀποτελεῖ: both makes the thing itself well disposed; the verb governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.). αὐτό, ‘the thing itself,’ refers to the object that possesses the excellence; and pres. pple ἐχον, ‘the thing being (disposed),’ is a pred. καὶ το ἐγγυον αὐτοῦ ἐδ ἀποδιδότωσι: and

οράω: to see, look, behold, 6

ὁφθαλμός, ὁ: eye, 3

πολέμοις, -α, -ον: hostile, of the enemy, 2

ῥητός, -ον: to be said or mentioned, 2

σπουδαίοις, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9

τρέχω: to run (aor. ἐδραμον), 1

φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 1
δὲ καὶ ὃδε ἦσται φανερόν, ἐὰν θεωρήσωμεν ποία τίς ἦστιν ἡ φύσις αὐτῆς. ἐν παντὶ δὴ συνεχεὶ καὶ διαπερτῶ ἐστὶ λαβέων τὸ μέν πλεῖον τὸ δ᾽ ἐλαττον τὸ δ᾽ ἱσον, καὶ ταῦτα ἦ κατ᾽ αὐτὸ τὸ πράγμα ἦ πρὸς ἠμᾶς τὸ δ᾽ ἱσον μέσον τι ὑπερβολής καὶ ἐλλείψεως. λέγω δὲ τοῦ μὲν πράγματος μέσον τὸ ἱσον ἀπέχον ἀφ᾽ ἐκατέρου τῶν ἁκρων, ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἐν καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ πᾶσιν, πρὸς ἠμᾶς δὲ μὴ τε πλεονάζει μὴτε ἐλλείπει τούτῳ δ᾽ οὐχ ἐν, οὐδὲ ταὐτὸν πᾶσιν. οἶον εἰ τὰ δέκα πολλὰ τὰ δὲ δύο ὅλγα, τὰ εὖ μέσα λαμβάνουσι κατὰ τὸ πράγμα ίσω γάρ ὑπερέχει τε καὶ ὑπερέχεται τοῦτῳ δὲ μέσον ἦστι κατὰ τὴν ἀριθμητικὴ ἀναλογίαν. τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἠμᾶς οὖν οὕτω ληπτέον οὐ γάρ

ἀνα-λογία, ἡ: proportion, analogy, 1
ἀριθμητικὸς, -ῆς, -ῶν: arithmetical, 1
δέκα: ten, 2
δι-απερτός, -ῆς, -ῶν: divided, separated, 1
δύο: two, 6
εἷς, μία, ἕν: one, single, alone, 9
ἐκάτερος, -ας, -ῶν: each of two, either, 5
ἐλάττων, -ου: smaller, fewer, 5
ἐξ: six, 2
θεωρεῖν: to see, watch, look at, 1
ὑσσος, -ῆς, -ῶν: equal to, the same as, like, 6

ληπτέος, -ου: to be taken or received, 3
μή-τε: and not; neither…nor, 8
ὁλίγος, -ῆς, -ῶν: few, little, small, 6
ὄπερ, ὢπερ, ὀπέρ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
πλεονάζω: to have excess of, abound in, 1
πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7
συν-έχω: to hold together, 1
ὑπερ-έχω: to be above, hold above, 1
φανερός, -άς, -ῶν: visible, manifest, evident, 5
ζῶς: in this way, in the following way, 1

μέσον τι (ἐστίν): (is) a mean; add verb

τὸ δὲ τοῦ μὲν πράγματος μέσον: by the mean of a thing I mean/denote…; ‘I say the mean of a thing (is)…’ perfect

τοῦτο…ἐπέχον: the thing…; substantive from the neut. sg. pres. pple

ἐσσον: equally; adv. acc. (inner acc.)
ἀκρα: extremes; as often in this context

τὸ αὐτὸ: attributive αὐτὸς means ‘same’

πάσιν: for…; dat. pl. τῶς

πρὸς ἠμᾶς (λέγω): by (the mean) in relation to us (I mean); add verb

δ…ἐλλείπει: (that) which…; relative clause with missing antecedent

τοῦτο (ἐστίν): add linking verb

ταῦτῳ: τὸ αὐτὸ; see note l 31

σον: for example; ‘in respect to which’

τὸ δέκα πολλὰ…: 10 is many and 2 is few

ἐσσον: by an equal amount

ληπτέεον (ἐστίν): (is) to be taken up
ἐν τῷ δέκα μναὶ φαγεῖν πολὺ δύο δὲ ὀλίγον, ὅ ἀλείπτης ἐξ μναὶ προστάξει: ἐστὶ γὰρ ἵσως καὶ τοῦτο πολὺ τῷ ληψιμένῳ Ὄ ὀλίγον: Μίλων μὲν γὰρ ὀλίγον, τῷ δὲ ἀρχομένῳ τῶν γυμνασιῶν πολὺ. ὁμοίως ἐπὶ δρόμου καὶ πάλης. οὕτω δὴ πᾶς ἐπιστήμων τὴν ὑπερβολὴν μὲν καὶ τὴν ἔλλεως φεύγει, τὸ δὲ μέσον ἤτει καὶ τοῦθ’ αἰρεῖται, μέσον δὲ οὕτω τὸ τοῦ πράγματος ἀλλὰ τὸ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.

ἐν δὴ πάσα ἐπιστήμη οὕτω τὸ ἔργον εὐ ἐπιτελεῖ, πρὸς τὸ μέσον βλέπουσα καὶ εἰς τοῦτο ἄγουσα τὰ ἔργα (ὅθεν εἰώθασι ἐπιλέγειν τοῖς εὗ ἔχουσιν ἔργοις ὅτι οὐτ’ ἀφελεῖ μετίν οὕτε προσεθείναι, ὡς τῆς μὲν ὑπερβολῆς καὶ τῆς ἐλλείψεως φθειρούσης τὸ εὗ, τῆς δὲ μεσότητος σφιξοῦσης,

άγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3
ἀλείπτης, -ου, ὁ: coach, trainer; anointer, 1
ἀρχο: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3
ἀφ-αἱρέω: to take away, exclude, 2
βλέπω: to look at, see, 2
γυμνασίον, τό: bodily exercise; gymnasion, 3
δέκα: ten, 2
δρόμος, ὁ: course; race, foot-race, 1
δύο: two, 6
εἰσοδᾶ: to be accustomed, 1
ἐξ: six, 10
ἐπι-λέγω: to speak on, attribute, apply, 2
ἐπιστήμων, -ον: expert, wise in (gen), 1

1 οὗ γὰρ: οὕτω modifies προστάξει
τῷ: for someone; alternative form for τινί
μναί: pounds; mina is both a unit of money worth 100 drachmae and a weight (15.2 oz)
φαγεῖν: to eat; aor. inf. ἐσθίω; explanatory (epexegetical) inf. modifying πολύ, ὀλίγον
πολύ (εἰσι): add linking verb
δύο (μναί) ὀλίγον (εἰσι): add verb
2 (οὗ) προστάξει: fut.; include οὗ from l. 36
ἐστιν: τοῦτο is the subject
καί: in fact; or ‘actually;’ adv.
3 τῷ ληψιμένῳ: for (the one)…; fut. mid.
λαμβάνω i.e. athlete overseen by trainer
Μίλων (ἐστι): for Milo (it is); dat. interest
4 τῷ δὲ ἀρχομένῳ: for one…; dat. of interest;
ἀρχο: mid. pple + gen. object
(ἐστίν) πολύ: add verb
ἐπί…: in the case of…
ἐπι-τελέω: to complete, finish, accomplish, 2
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4
Μίλων, Μίλωνος, ὁ: Milo, 1
μναί, -ᾶς, ἡ: 1 pound; mina (=100 drachmae), 2
δ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7
ὀλίγος, -ό, -ου: few, little, small, 6
πάλη: wrestling, 1
πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, 2
προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoins, 5
σφίξω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
ἐσθίω: to eat, 2
φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8
5 δὴ: just, precisely; intensive with οὕτω
6 τοῦθ᾽: τοῦτο, i.e. τὸ μέσον, the mean
αἰρεῖται: the middle voice of αἰρέω, ‘take,’ means ‘choose’ (lit. ‘take for oneself’)
7 μέσον (ἐστίν): the mean (is)…
τὸ τοῦ πράγματος (μέσον): (the mean)…
τὸ πρὸς ἡμᾶς (μέσον): (the mean)…
8 δὴ: accordingly, then; inferential
9 βλέπουσα…ἀγουσα…: by…by…; pres.
pples causal in sense, ἀγω, ‘lead’
εἰσόθασιν: 3p pf. ἐσθία, translate as pres.
10 τοῖς ἔργοις: on works; dat. of compound
ἐν ἔχουσιν: being well disposed; dat. pl.
11 ἐστίν: it is allowed/possible; + aor. inf.
ὡς…σφίξουσι: on the grounds that…; ὡς + pples (here two gen. abs.) express alleged cause from a character’s point of view
12 τὸ εὗ: the good
οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοὶ τεχνίται, ὡς λέγομεν, πρὸς τοῦτο βλέποντες ἐργάζονται. ἡ δὲ ἀρετὴ πάσης τέχνης ἀκριβεστέρα καὶ ἀμείωων ἐστὶν ὡστε καὶ ἡ φύσις, τοῦ μέσου ἃν εἰπη στο-χαστική. λέγω δὲ τὴν ἲθυκὴν ἀυτὴ γὰρ ἐστὶ περὶ πάθη καὶ πράξεις, εν δὲ τούτοις ἐστὶν ὑπερβολὴ καὶ Ἐλλεψις καὶ τὸ μέσον. οἷον καὶ φοβηθηκαν καὶ ἑρμηνεύει καὶ ἔλεησαι καὶ ὅλος ἦσθην καὶ λυπηθήσει ἐστὶ καὶ μᾶλλον καὶ ἡπτον, καὶ ἀμφότερα ὅκι εὖ τὸ δὲ δεῖ καὶ ἐφ᾽ ὅς καὶ πρὸς ὅς καὶ οDonaldTrump καὶ ὡς δεῖ, μέσον τε καὶ ἀριστον, ὅπερ ἐστὶ τῆς ἀρετῆς. ὡμοῖος δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰς πράξεις ἐστὶν ὑπερβολή καὶ Ἐλλεψις καὶ τὸ μέσον. ἡ δὲ ἀρετὴ περὶ πάθη καὶ

13 ὡς: as...; parenthetical
14 πάσης τέχνης: than...; gen. of comparison
15 καὶ: also
16 λέγω: I mean; ‘I am talking about’
17 ἐστιν: there are...; pl. subject
18 οἷον: for example; ‘in respect to which’
20 καὶ μᾶλλον καὶ ἡπτον: both too much and too little; the comparative degree can express excess—as it does here
21 οὐκ εὖ: i.e. wrongly
23 καὶ: also

ἄκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
ἀμείωων, -ον (ονος): better, 2
ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: both, each of two, 1
ἀριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
βλέπω: to look at, see, 2
ἐλέεω: to have pity, show mercy, 3
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, accomplish, 1

δοπερ, ἡπερ, ῥεπ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
στοχαστικός, -η, -ον: able to aim and hit, 3
tεχνίτης, δ: craftsman, artisan, 1

feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
ηθικός, -η, -ον: ethical, moral, 6
πάθη: the very one who, very thing which, 9
στοχαστικός, -η, -ον: able to aim and hit, 3

τὸ δὲ δεῖ... ὡς δεῖ: but (to feel)...; a series of subordinate clause in the attributive position under τὸ; assume ‘one ought to feel’ in each clause

δεῖ: one ought; ‘it is necessary (for one)’
ἐπὶ: on which terms; i.e. under which circumstances or conditions
οὐ ἔνεκα: for the sake of which purpose

ὥς: in what way...; or ‘how’

καὶ ἀριστον (ἐστιν): nom. pred.
supply the linking verb πάσχω

τῆς ἀρετῆς: (a sign) of virtue; or ‘of virtue’
gen. of quality as predicate

καὶ: also

ἐστιν: parallel to 17-8 above
πράξεις ἐστίν, ἐν οἷς ὡς ἡ ὑπερβολὴ ἀμαρτανεῖται καὶ ἡ ἐλλεψις [ψέγεται], τὸ δὲ μέσον ἐπανεῖται καὶ κατορθοῦται ταῦτα δ' ἀμφω τῆς ἁρετῆς. μεσότης τις ἀρα ἐστὶν ἡ ἁρετή, στοχαστική γε οὐδα τοῦ μέσου. ἐτὶ τὸ μὲν ἀμαρτάνειν πολλαχῶς ἐστὶν (τὸ γὰρ κακὸν τοῦ ἀπείρου, ὡς οἱ Πυθαγόρειοι έκαζον, τὸ δ' ἀγαθὸν τοῦ πεπερασμένου), τὸ δὲ κατορθοῦν μοναχῶς (διό καὶ τὸ μὲν ῥάδιον τὸ δὲ χαλεπόν, ράδιον μὲν τὸ ἀποτυχεῖν τοῦ σκοποῦ, χαλεπὸν δὲ τὸ ἐπιτυχεῖν) καὶ διὰ ταῦτ' οὖν τῆς μὲν κακίας ἡ ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἡ ἐλλεψις, τῆς δ' ἁρετῆς ἡ μεσότης.

ἔσθλοι μὲν γὰρ ἀπλῶς, παντοδαπῶς δὲ κακοὶ.

'Εστιν ἀρα ἡ ἁρετή ἔξις προαιρετική, ἐν μεσότητι οὖσα

25 ἐν οἷς...: relative clause, both πάθη and πράξεις are antecedents
26 μεσότης: are errors; ‘miss the mark’
27 ταῦτα ἀμφω (εἰσίν): omit
28 τῆς ἁρετῆς: (a sign) of virtue; or ‘of virtue’
29 τοῦ μέσου: obj. of στοχαστική
30 έκαζον: 3p impf.
31 τοῦ πεπερασμένου: (εἰσίν): of the limited; gen. of quality, pf. pass. pple περαινώ
32 κατορθοῦν: succeeding; articular inf. o-contract verb or unlikely a neut. pple
33 τῆς μὲν κακίας: (are) of vice; gen. of quality or ‘are the mark of vice’
34 τῆς δ' ἁρετῆς: (are) of virtue; gen. of quality or ‘are the mark of virtue’
35 τοῦ κατορθοῦν (εἰσίν): succeeding; articular inf. o-contract verb or unlikely a neut. pple
36 οὖσα: pres. pple εἰμί
πρὸς ἁμᾶς, ὀρισμένη λόγω καὶ φιλονομικὸς ὀρίσειν. μεσοτής δὲ δύο κακιῶν, τῆς μὲν καθ’ ἕπερβολήν τῆς δὲ κατ’ ἔλεψιν. καὶ ἔτι τῶν τὰς μὲν ἐλλείπους τὰς δ’ ὑπερβάλλει τοῦ δέοντος ἐν τε τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ἐν ταῖς πράξεις, τῇ δ’ ἀρετῇ τὸ μέσον καὶ εὐρίσκει καὶ αἴρεσθαι. διὸ κατὰ μὲν τὴν ὁσίαν καὶ τὸν λόγον τὸν τὸ τι ἦν εἶναι λέγοντα μεσοτής ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετή, κατὰ δὲ τὸ ἀριστον καὶ τὸ εὖ ἀκρότης. οὐ πάσα δὲ ἐπιδεχέται πράξεις οὐδὲ πάν τάδος τῆς μεσοτήτας· ἑνα γὰρ εὐθὺς ἀνώμαται συνελήμμενα μετὰ τῆς φαιλότητος, οἷον ἐπιχαρέσκαι ἀναισχυντικὸ φθόνος, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν πράξεων μοιχεία κλοπῆ ἀνδροφονία· πάντα γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα λέγεται

1 τῇ πρὸς ἡμᾶς: prepositional phrase in the attributive position modifying μεσοτήτι ὀρισμένη: defined; pf. pass. pple, the pple describes the definition but is not part of it λόγω: dat. of means ὃ ἀν ὁ φιλονομικὸς ὀρίσειν: and by what... would... ‘(by that) by which...would,’ a relative clause with 3s potential aor. opt.; the missing antecedent is a dat. of means
2 (επτών) μεσοτής: it is... nom. pred. + gen. is ‘the mean of...’ or ‘the mean between...’ τῆς μὲν...τῆς δ’: one (vice)...the other...; partitive apposition (S981) καὶ (τά): in (respect to); ‘in accordance with’
3 καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ: and in addition therefore; τῷ is an inferential particle formed from the article ὃ, ἤ, τῷ (S2987)
4 τοῦ δέοντος: from...; gen. of τὸ δέον and obj. of both infs.; a common substantive formed from the neut. pple of δεῖ
5 τὴν δ’ ἄρετην: but that virtue...; ind. disc. καὶ...καί: both
6 κατὰ...: in (respect to)...
7 κατὰ...: in (respect to)... τὸ εὖ: the good
8 ἀκρότης (ἐπτὶ ἡ ἀρετῆ): ellipsis
9 ἐνιαίου ὀνομάσται: some (vices) are at once named; 3s pf. pass. ὀνομάζω
10 συνελήμμενα: comprehended; pf. pass. pple
Moral Virtue is a Disposition to Choose the Mean (II.6)  1107a

τῷ αὐτὰ φαύλα ἦναι, ἀλλ' οὗχ αἱ ὑπερβολαὶ αὐτῶν οὐδ' αἱ ἐλλείψεις. οὐκ ἦστων οὖν οὐδὲποτε περὶ αὐτὰ κατορθοῦν, ἀλλ' ἀεί ἀμαρτάνειν οὐδ' ἦστι τὸ εὖ ἢ μὴ εὖ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐν τῷ ἦν δεὶ καὶ ὅτα καὶ ως μοιχεύειν, ἀλλ' ἀπλῶς τὸ ποιεῖν ὡςον τούτων ἀμαρτάνειν ἦστιν. ὁμοίον οὖν τὸ ἀξίον καὶ περὶ τὸ ἄδικεῖν καὶ δειλαίειν καὶ ἀκολασταίειν ἦναι μεσοτήτα καὶ ὑπέρβολη καὶ ἐλλεψιν ἦσται γὰρ οὕτως ὕπερβολής καὶ ἐλλείψεως με- σότης καὶ ὑπέρβολής ὑπέρβολη καὶ ἐλλεψις ἐλλείψεως. ὡσπερ δὲ σωφροσύνης καὶ ἀνδρείας οὐκ ἦστω ὑπέρβολη καὶ ἐλλεψις διὰ τὸ τὸ μέσον ἦναι πως ἄκρον, οὕτως οὐδ' ἐκεῖνων μεσότης οὐδ' ὑπέρβολη καὶ ἐλλεψις, ἀλλ' ῥέν ἄν

α-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 2
ἀεί: always, forever, in every case, 6
ἀκολασταίω: to be licentious, intemperate, 2
ἀξίοω: to think worthy, deem right, 1
δειλαίω: to be a coward, 1
ἐκείνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
κατ-ορθόω: to succeed, set right, 3

13 τῷ: therefore
αὐτὰ: themselves; intensive
αὐτῶν: of them; i.e. πάντα...τοιαῦτα
14 ἦστι: it is possible
οὐδέποτε: ever; following οὐκ
κατορθοῦν: pres. inf. o–contract verb
15 (ἦστιν) ἀμαρτάνειν: (it is possible)...
οὐδὲ ἦστι...περὶ: nor is...concerning...
τὸ εὖ ἢ μὴ εὖ: right or wrong; subject τὸ εὖ is elsewhere translated 'good' or 'success,' but here τὸ εὖ (πράττειν), 'doing well' and τὸ μὴ εὖ (πράττειν), 'not doing well'
16 ἐν τῷ...μοιχεύειν: (in the case of) committing adultery...; articular inf.
ἡν δεὶ καὶ ὅτε (δεὶ) καὶ ως (δεὶ): with whom one ought and when (one ought) and how (one ought)...; i.e. with the right person, at the right time and in the right manner
17 τὸ ποιεῖν: articular inf. as subject
ὅτιον οὖν τούτων: whatsoever of these; i.e. of the vices noted above; obj. of τὸ ποιεῖν
μοιχεύω: to commit adultery, 1
ὁμοίος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7
ὅτιον, ἦτιον, ὄτιον: whatsoever, 5
οὐδὲποτε: not ever, never, 1
τῷ: therefore, then, in this way, 2
φαύλος, -η, -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8

ὁμοίον οὖν (ἦστι): similar then (is); pred.
ὁτίον: thinking that there is in fact a mean and excess and a deficiency concerning being unjust, being a coward and being intemperate; ind. disc. governed by ἐξίον nom. sg. o-contract articular inf.
20 ἦστα: there will be...; 3s fut. εἰώ
οὕτω γε: in this way at least; Aristotle considers the consequences of II. 18-20
21 ὡσπερ δὲ: but just as...; strong adverbial
σωφροσύνης καὶ ἀνδρείας: gen. sg.
διὰ τὸ...ἐναλ...: on account of...being...; this articular inf. has an acc. subject and acc. pred. (ἀκρον, "extreme")
23 ὡστός: so...; responding to ὡσπερ
οὖθεν...οὔθε: not even...nor
ἐκείνων: i.e. of vices
ὡς ἄν πράττηται: in whatever way (these vices)...; general relative clause with ἄν + pres. pass. subj.: assume a neut. pl. subject
πράττηται ἀμαρτάνεται: ὅλως γὰρ οὖθ’ ὑπερβολὴς καὶ ἐλλείψεως μεσότης ἔστω, οὔτε μεσότητος ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἐλλεψις.

7. Δεὶ δὲ τοῦτο μὴ μόνον καθόλου λέγεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς καθ’ ἐκαστὰ ἐφαρμόττεων. ἐν γὰρ τοῖς περὶ τὰς πράξεις λόγους οἱ μὲν καθόλου κοινότεροί εἰσον, οἱ δ’ ἐπὶ μέρους ἀληθινώτεροι περὶ γὰρ τὰ καθ’ ἐκαστὰ αἱ πράξεις, δέον δ’ ἐπὶ τούτων συμφωνεῖν. ληπτέον οὖν ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς διαγραφῆς. περὶ μὲν οὖν φόβους καὶ τάρρη ἀνδρεία μεσό-

άληθινος, -ῆς, -ον: truthful, true, real, 2
dia-γραφή, η: diagram, 1
ἐφ-ἀρμόττω: apply, accommodate (+dat), 1
θάρρος, -ος, τό: rashness, confidence, 3
cαθ-δόλου: on the whole, in general, 4
κοινός, -ῆς, -ον: common(place); public, 7

25 ἀμαρτάνεται: they are wrong; ‘do wrong’
supply neut. pl. vices as the subject
οὐ(τε)…οὔτε: neither…nor
26 ἔστω: there exists, there is
28 τοῦτο: i.e. the definition of ἡ ἀρετή
(1106b36-1107a1); acc. subject of λέγεσθαι
and ἐφαρμόττειν
μὴ μόνον…ἀλλὰ καί: not only…but also…
29 τοῖς καθ’ ἐκαστα: to particular virtues;
‘those each by each,’ contrast to καθ-δόλου
29 ἐν τοῖς…λόγοις: in accounts
30 οἱ μὲν καθόλου: general (accounts),
general (accounts); καθόλου in attributive position
οἷς δὲ ἐπὶ μέρους: accounts in the case of a particular part; ἐπὶ μέρους is attributive
31 τὰ καθ’ ἐκαστα: particulars
αι πράξεις (εἰσίν): add linking verb

ληπτέος, -ον: to be taken or received, 3
μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
μόνος, -ῆς, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4
συμ-φωνεῖν: be in harmony or agreement, 2
φόβος, ο: fear, terror, panic, 8

32 (ἐ)δέω: they had to…; + inf. 3p impf. δέω,
‘ought,’ the impf. suggests necessity that is still true in the present: had to and still must. ‘The subject is still πράξεις’
ἐπι…: in the case of…; τοῦτων refers to τὰ καθ’ ἐκαστα
32 ληπτέον (ἐστίν) ταύτα: (we) must…‘(it is)
to be taken up (by us) these things’
impersonal verbal adj. + εἰςι expressing necessity and often translated actively; ταύτα is the acc. obj. (S2152)
ἐκ τῆς διαγραφῆς: from the diagram; the
diagram, now missing, was apparently a
table of virtues with a virtue as a mean and two vices representing excess or deficiency
33 θάρρη: instances of rashness; θάρρη-α
ἀνδρεία (ἐστίν): nom. subj., the article ἦ
is missing through crisis
Examples of the Mean in Particular Virtues (II.7)  1107b

tης’ τῶν δ’ ὑπερβαλλόντων ὁ μὲν τῇ ἀφοβίᾳ ἀνώμυμος (πολλὰ δ’ ἔστιν ἀνώμυμα), ὁ δ’ ἐν τῷ θαρρεῖν ὑπερβάλ-
λων θρασύς, ὁ δ’ ἐν τῷ μὲν φοβεῖσθαι ὑπερβαλλων τῷ δὲ θαρρεῖν ἑλλείπων δειλός. περὶ ἢδονᾶς δὲ καὶ λύπασ—οὐ πάσας, ἢττον δὲ ταῖς λύπας—μεσότης μὲν σω-
φροσύνη, ὑπερβολή δὲ ἀκολασία. ἑλλείποντες δὲ περὶ τὰς ἢδονᾶς οὐ πάνω γίνονται· διόπερ οὐδ’ ὀνόματος τετυχή-
κασιον οὐδ’ οἱ τοιοῦτοι, ἐστωσαν δὲ ἀναίσθητοι. περὶ δὲ δό-
σιν χρημάτων καὶ λήψιν μεσότης μὲν ἐλευθεριάτης, ὑπερ-
βολή δὲ καὶ ἑλλεψις ἀσωτία καὶ ἀνελευθερία. ἑναντίως δ’ ἐν αὐταῖς ὑπερβάλλουσι καὶ ἑλλείπουσι· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἀσωτὸς ἐν μὲν προέσει ὑπερβάλλει ἐν δὲ λήψει ἑλλεῖπει,
ο δ’ ἀνελευθερος ἐν μὲν λήψει ὑπερβάλλει ἐν δὲ προέσει ἔλειπε. νῦν μὲν οὖν τύπῳ καὶ ἐπὶ κεφαλαίου λέγομεν, ἀρκούμενοι αὐτῷ τούτῳ: ὥστε τοίς ἀκριβεστέροις περὶ αὐτῶν διορισθήσεται. περὶ δὲ χρήματα καὶ ἄλλαι διαθέσεις εἰσὶ, μεσότης μὲν μεγαλοπρέπεια (ὁ γὰρ μεγαλοπρέπης διαφέρει ἐλευθερίου· ὃ μὲν γὰρ περὶ μεγάλα, ὃ δὲ περὶ μικρά), ὑπερβολὴ δὲ ἀπειροκαλία καὶ βαναυσία, ἢλειψις δὲ μικροπρέπεια· διαφέρουσι δ’ αὐτὰ τῶν περὶ τὴν ἐλευθεριότητα, πη δὲ διαφέρουσιν, ὥστε τοίς καὶ ἄτιμίαις μεσότησ μὲν μεγαλοψυχίᾳ, ὑπερβολὴ δὲ χαυνότητι τις λεγομένη, ἢλειψις δὲ μικροψυχίᾳ· ὡς δ’ ἐλέγομεν ἔχειν πρὸς τὴν μεγαλοπρέπειαν τὴν ἔλευ-

13 τύπῳ: in...; dat. of manner
14 ἐπί...: in the case of...; perfect πάσχω
15 αὐτῷ τοῦτῳ: with...; dat. of means, αὐτῷ is an intensive pronoun
16 ὥστε: adv. acc.
17 ακριβεστέρος: comparative adv.
18 διορισθήσαται: fut. pass.
καὶ: also
εἰσὶ: 3p pres. εἰμι
19 ὑπερβολὴ δὲ (ἔστιν): add verb
20 τῶν...ἐλευθεριότητα: from those...; gen. of separation
21 ὥστε: adv. acc.
διορισθήσαται: it will...; impersonal fut. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
22 μεσότης μὲν (ἔστιν): add verb
23 λεγομένη: so-called; pass. pple
24 ὡς...: as...; introducing a clause of comparison answered by ὦτὸς
ἔχειν...τὴν ἐλευθεριότητα: that generosity is disposed...; ind. disc.
Examples of the Mean in Particular Virtues (II.7) 1107b

θεριότητα, <τῷ> περὶ μικρά διαφέρουσαν, οὕτως ἔχει τις καὶ πρὸς τὴν μεγαλυπχίαν, περὶ τιμῆν οὕτω μεγάλην, αὐτῇ περὶ μικρὰν οὕσα· ἐστὶ γὰρ ώς δεῖ ὀρέγεσθαι τιμῆς καὶ μᾶλλον ἢ δεὶ καὶ ἦττον, λέγεται δ’ ὁ μὲν ύπερβάλλων ταῖς ὀρέξεις φιλότιμος, ὁ δ’ ἐλλείπων ἀφιλότιμος, ὁ δὲ μέσος ἀνώνυμος. ἀνώνυμοι δὲ καὶ αἱ διαθέσεις, πλὴν ἡ τοῦ φιλότιμου φιλοτιμία. θεῖν ἐπιδικάζονται οἱ ἄκροι τῆς μέσης χώρας καὶ ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐστὶ μὲν ὅτε τὸν μέσον φιλότιμον καλοῦμεν ἐστὶ δ’ ὅτε ἀφιλότιμον, καὶ ἐστὶ μὲν ὅτε

ἀν-ώσμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8 ἀ-φιλότιμος, -ον: unambitious/ not honor-loving, 3 διά-θεσις, -εις ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4 ἐπι-δικάζομαι: to lay claim on (gen.), 1 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4 μεγαλο-ψυχία, ἡ: magnanimity, highmindedness, 2 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7

25 μικρά: small things
οὕτως ἔχει: is disposed...; ἔχω + adv. is translated as εἰμι + pred.
τις: a certain (state)
καί: also
26 οὕτων: pres. pple εἰμί
μεγάλην: modifies τιμήν
αὕτη: this; i.e. μικροψυχία; modifies nom. τις, which refers indirectly to μικροψυχία
27 περὶ μικράν (τιμήν): ellipsis
ἐστί ὁς: it is possible that...
τιμῆς: gen. obj. of verb of desire (1349)
καί...καί...: both...and...
28 ἦττον (ὃ δεῖ): less...; ellipsis, comparative adv. ἦττον
δ-θεῖν: for which reason; from where, 7 ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6 ὀρεξίς, ἡ: desire, longing, striving, 5 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6 τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8 φιλο-τιμία, ἡ: ambition, love of honor, 2 φιλο-τιμος, -ον: ambitious, honor-loving, 4 χώρα, ἡ: place; region, 1

λέγεται (εἴναι): as often, the εἰμί is understood and governs a nom. pred.
29 ταῖς ὀρέξεσιν in...; dat. of respect
φιλότιμος (ἐστίν)
ἀφιλότιμος (ἐστίν)
30 ἀνώνυμος (ἐστίν)
ἀνώνυμοι (εἰσίν)
ἡ τοῦ φιλότιμου (διάθεσις ἐστίν):
31 οὓς: for this reason; ‘whence,’ inferential οἱ ἄκροι: the people at this extreme
ἐστι μὲν ὅτε...ἐστι δὲ ὅτε: sometimes...at other times; ‘there is (a time) when...there is (a time) when...’; a common idiom with missing antecedent (S2515)
33 ἐστι μὲν ὅτε...: sometimes
κοινωνίας· καλέω· ἀἀἀ...

λλήλων...  ἑτία, ὑτενέγω... ὑτεν... ὑτεν...

διαφέρουσιν... ὑτεν... ὑτεν... ὑτεν...

κοινωνία, ἕλλαθε, καταλέγωμεν· ἕλλαθε, ἕλλαθε, ἕλλαθε...

τῶν υφηγημένων τράπον. ἐστι δὲ καὶ περὶ τὴν ὀργήν ὑπερβολή καὶ ἠλευπίς καὶ μεσότης, σχεδὸν δὲ ἀνωνύμων ὄντων αὐτῶν τῶν μέσων πράον λέγοντες τὴν μεσότητα πραότητα καλέσωμεν· τῶν δ' ἄκρων ὁ μὲν ὑπερβάλλων ὀργύλος ἐστώ, ἡ δὲ κακία ὀργύλοτης, ὁ δ' ἠλεπίων ἀργητὸς τις, ἡ δ' ἠλευπίς ἀργησία. εἰδὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα τρεῖς μεσότητες, ἔχουσαι μὲν τινα ὀμοιότητα πρὸς ἀλλήλας, διαφέρουσαι δ' ἀλλήλων... πάσαι μὲν γὰρ εἰσὶ περὶ λόγων καὶ πράξεων κοινωνίαν, διαφέρουσι δὲ ὅτι ἢ μὲν ἐστι περὶ τάληθες τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς,
Examples of the Mean in Particular Virtues (II.7)

13 ἀἱ δὲ: those other (two)…; ἀἱ is not a relative but demonstrative from αἱ (S1107) to ἡδῷ: pleasantness; ‘the pleasant’

tοῦτοι δὲ τὸ μὲν… βλοῦν: of this (pleasure) one is in child’s play and the other in all matters in life; partitive gen. referring to ἡδῷ: of the two means concerning pleasure, one mean is found in play, the other in life

14 ρήτεν (ἔστιν): we must… ‘(it is) to be mentioned (by us)’ impersonal verbal adj. + εἰς expressing necessity (S2152)

Ἰνα… κατίδωμεν: so that…may…; purpose with 1p aor. subj. καθ-οράω

15 ἐπαινετός (ἔστιν): nom. pred.

16 οὔτε…οὔτε…(ἐίσιον): neither…nor

17 τοῦτων: of these; i.e. of the three sets of means and extremes discussed

18 τὰ πλεῖον: the majority; πλείον(ν)α, ‘the

αἱ δὲ περὶ τὸ ἡδόν τοῦτοι δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐν παιδία τὸ δὲ ἐν πάσι τοῖς κατὰ τὸν βλόν. ρήτεν οὖν καὶ περὶ τοῦτων, ἵνα μᾶλλον κατίδωμεν ὅτι ἐν πάσῳ ἡ μεσότης ἐπανετήν, τὰ δὲ ἀκρα οὔτ’ ἐπανετὰ οὔτ’ ὀρθὰ ἄλλα ψεκτα. εἰσὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ τοῦτων τὰ πλεῖον ἀνόνymiα, πειρατέον δὲ, ὀστηρ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων, αὐτοὺς ὄνοματοποιεῖν σαφνεῖας ἐνεκα καὶ τοῦ εὐπαρακολούθητου. περὶ μὲν οὖν τὸ ἄλληθεν ὁ μὲν μέσος ἀληθὴς τις καὶ ἡ μεσότης ἀληθεία λεγέσθω, ἡ δὲ προσποίησις ὅ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ μεῖζων ἀλαζονεῖα καὶ ὁ ἐχὼν αὐτὴν ἀλαζὼν, ἡ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ ἐλαττον εἰρωνεία καὶ ἐρων <ὁ ἐχὼν>. περὶ δὲ τὸ ἡδύ τὸ μὲν ἐν παιδία ὁ μὲν μέσος εὐτράπελος καὶ ἡ διάθεσις εὐτραπελία, ἡ δ᾽ ὑπερβολῆ βω-
μολοχία καὶ ὁ ἐχων αὐτὴν βωμολόχος, ὁ δὲ ἐλλεῖπων ἀγροικὸς τις καὶ ἡ ἐξις ἄγροικια· περὶ δὲ τὸ λαυπὸν ἥδω τὸ ἐν τῷ βίω ὁ μὲν ὡς δὲ ἦδω ὁν φίλος καὶ ἡ μεσότης φιλία, ὁ δ᾽ ὑπερβάλλων, εἰ μὲν οὐδενὸς ἐνεκα, ἀρέσκοι, εἰ δ᾽ ὥφελείας τῆς αὐτοῦ, κόλαξ, ὁ δ᾽ ἐλλεῖπων καὶ ἐν πᾶσιν ἄνδης δύσερς τις καὶ δύσκολος. εἰδὲ δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς παθήμασι καὶ περὶ τὰ πάθη μεσότητες· ἡ γὰρ αἴδως ἄρετη μὲν οὐκ ἔστιν, ἐπανεῖται δὲ καὶ ὁ αἰδήμων. καὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτοις δὲ μὲν λέγεται μέσος, ὁ δ᾽ ὑπερβάλλων, ὡς ὁ καταπλῆξ ὁ πάντα αἰδοῦμενος· ὁ δ᾽ ἐλλεῖπων ὁ μηδὲν ὅλως ἀναισχυντος, ὁ δὲ μέσος αἰδήμων. νέμει-


dύσ-ερις, -δος ὁ, ἡ: quarrelsome 1
dύσ-κολος, -ων: hard to please, 1
cατα-πλῆξ, -γος, ὁ: bashful (struck dumb), 1
cόλαξ, κόλακος ὁ: flatterer, 1
νέμεις, ἡ: righteous indignation, 1
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: suffering, misfortune, 1
φιλία, ἡ: friendship, love, 2

φιλος -η -ου: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 3
ὡφελεία, ἡ: help, aid, benefit, 1

32 δὲ καὶ: but in fact...; adverative
33 καὶ γάρ: for in fact
ἐν τούτωισ: in these matters; i.e. τὰ πάθη δὲ μὲν...δὲ δὲ: one...another...; ‘this...that’ the accented article ὁ indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107) λέγεται (εἴπαι): supply inf.
ὑπερβάλλων (λέγεται εἴπαι): nom. pred.
34 ὡς: as for example...; ὁ καταπλῆξ: in apposition to ὑπερβάλλων ὁ αἰδοῦμενος: pres. mid. pple in the attributive position modifying ὁ καταπλῆξ πάντα: in all things; acc. of respect
35 μηδὲν: not at all; inner acc. (‘has no any lacking’); μη is used instead of οὐ because the participle is conditional in sense ἀναισχυντος (εἴστιν): nom. pred.
αἰδήμων (εἴστιν)
Relation between the Mean and its Two Extremes (II.8) 1108b

σις δὲ μεσότης φθόνου καὶ ἐπιχαιρέκακιας, εἰσὶ δὲ περὶ λύπην καὶ ἠδονήν τάς ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβαίνουσι τοῖς πέλας γυνομένας· ὁ μὲν γὰρ νευστηκὸς λυπεῖται ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀνα-ξίωσ ἐπὶ πράττονσι, ὁ δὲ φθονορός ὑπερβάλλον τούτον ἐπὶ πάσι λυπεῖται, ὡς ἐπίχαιρεκάκος τοσοῦτον ἔλλειται τοῦ λυπείσθαι ὡστε καὶ χαίρειν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων καὶ ἀλλοθεί καιρὸς ἐσται· περὶ δὲ δικαιοσύνης, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀπλῶς λέγεται, μετὰ ταῦτα διελόμενοι περὶ ἐκατέρας ἑροῦμεν πῶς μεσοτήτες εἰσν ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν λογικῶν ἄρετῶν.

8. Ὑπὸ δὲ διαθέσεων οὐσῶν, δύο μὲν κακίων, τῆς μὲν καθ' ὑπερβολήν τῆς δὲ κατ' ἐλλεωμί, μᾶς δὲ ἄρετής τῆς

ἑλλοθεισ᾽ in another place, elsewhere, 1
ἀν-αξίωσ: unworthily, 1
dιαθεσις, -εος ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4
dι-αιρέω: to divide, distinguish, separate, 3
dικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 1
dύο: two, 6
eἰς, μία, ἕν: one, single, alone, 9
ekάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
ἐπὶ καθορέκακία, ἡ: joy over another’s misfortune, 2
ἐπιχαιρέκακος, -ον: rejoicing over another’s misfortune, 1

καιρὸς, ὁ: (right) moment, occasion, time, 3
λογικός, ῥή, ὁν: intellectual, 1
μετα: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
νευστηκὸς, ῥή, ὁν: rightfully indignant, 1
πέλας: near, close; neighbor, other, 1
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
τοσούτος, -αττι, -οτο: so great, so many, 3
τρέις, τρία: three, 2
φθονορός, -ά, ὁ: envious, 1
φθόνος, ὁ: envy, 4
ὡστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

contains the cognate of χαιρειν as a stem

7 ἔσται: there will be...; 3s fut. εἰη; Aristotle postpones discussion of τὰ πάθη for later
ἐπει: since
οὐχ ἀπλῶς: not having just one meaning
8 μετα ταῦτα: after these things; i.e. in Book 6, much later after the discussion
διελόμενοι: aor. mid. pple διαφέρω
ἐροῦμεν: fut. λέγω (ἐρέω)
πώς...ἰσον: ind. question
9 ὀμοίως...λογικῶν ἄρετῶν: Aristotle does not in fact consider the mean of intellectual virtues elsewhere in the N.E.

11 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
Τριών...οὐσῶν: gen. abl. pres. pple εἰη

Δύο μὲν...τῆς μὲν...τῆς δὲ...μᾶς δ(ε): two (being)... one...the other...one (being)... partitive apposition to gen. abs.

12 κατά(ά)...: in respect to...
μεσότητος, πάσαι πάσαις ἀντίκειναι πως· αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀκραὶ καὶ τῇ μέσῃ καὶ ἀλλῆλαις ἕναντὶ εἰσὶν, ἢ δὲ μέση ταῖς ἀκραῖς· ἠσπερ γὰρ τὸ ἴσον πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἔλαττον μεῖζον πρὸς δὲ τὸ μεῖζον ἐλαττων, οὕτως αἱ μέσαι ἐξεις πρὸς μὲν τὰς ἐλλείψεις ὑπερβάλλουσι πρὸς δὲ τὰς ὑπερβολὰς ἐλλείπουσιν ἐν τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ταῖς πράξεων. οἱ γὰρ ἀνδρεῖοι πρὸς μὲν τὸν δειλὸν θρασύς φαίνεται, πρὸς δὲ τὸν θρασύν δειλὸς· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ὁ σώφρων πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἀναίσθητον ἀκόλαστον, πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἀκόλαστον ἀναίσθητος, ὁ δὲ ἐλευθέριος πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἀνελεύθερον ἁσώτους, πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἁσώτου ἀνελεύθερος. διὸ καὶ ἀπωθοῦνται τὸν μέσον οἱ ἀκροὶ ἐκάτερος πρὸς ἐκάτερον, καὶ καλοῦσι

13 πάσαις: dat. obj. of compound verb ἑναντία: governs a dat.
15 ταῖς ἀκραῖς (ἕναντια ἑστίν): ellipsis τὸ ἴσον: the equal πρὸς: in regard to...
16 μεῖζον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
    τὸ μεῖζον: the lesser ἐλαττων (ἐστίν): pred., τὸ ἴσον is still subject
टोν ἀνδρείων ὁ μὲν δειλὸς θρασὺν ὁ δὲ θρασὺς δειλόν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀλλών ἀνάλογων. οὕτω δ’ ἀντικειμένων ἀλλήλως τούτων, πλείοτηθ ἐναντίοτηθ ἔστι τοῖς ἄκροις πρὸς ἄλληλα ἢ πρὸς τὸ μέσον πορρωτέρω γὰρ ταῦτα ἀφέστηκεν ἀλλήλων ἢ τοῦ μέσου, ὥσπερ τὸ μέγα τοῦ μικροῦ καὶ τὸ μικρὸν τοῦ μεγάλου ἢ ἄμφω τοῦ ᾠσοῦ. ἐπὶ πρὸς μὲν τὸ μέσον ἔνιοι ἄκροι ὀμοιότητις τις φαίνεται, ὡς τῇ θρασύτητι πρὸς τὴν ἄνδρειαν καὶ τῇ ἁσωτίᾳ πρὸς τὴν ἐλευθεριότητα· τοῖς δὲ ἄκροις πρὸς ἄλληλα πλείοτηθ ἀνομοιότητα· τὰ δὲ πλείον ἀπέχοντα ἀπ’ ἀλλήλων ἐναντία ὀρίζονται, ὡστε καὶ μᾶλλον ἐναντία τὰ πλείον ἀπέχοντα. πρὸς δὲ τὸ μέσον

25 ἀλλήλων: one another, 8
ἀμφω: both (dual), 8
ἀν-ἀλογος, -ov: proportionate, analogous, 2
ἀν-ομοιότητις, ἡτος, ἡ: dissimilarity, 1
ἀντι-κείμαι: to be set against or opposite, 3
ἀ-σωτία, ἡ: prodigality, wastefulness, 2
ἀφ-ιστίμιμ: set apart, remove; mid. withdraw 4
ἐλευθεριότητις, -ττος, ὁ: generosity, liberality, 4
ἐναντιότητις, ὁ: opposition, contrariety, 1

26 ἐπί...: in the case of...
ἀνάλογων: by analogy; adv.: adverbial acc.
οὕτω...τούτων: gen. abs.
ἀλλῆλως: dat. obj. of compound verb

27 πλείοτηθ: the greatest; ‘most’
tοῖς ἄκροις: for the extremes; dat. of interest or possession (’of...’) as pred.
ἡ: than

28 πορρωτέρω: comparative adv. πόρρω 
tαῦτα: these (two); i.e. extremes, subject; 
ἀφέστηκεν: stand (away); i.e. ’are,’ 3s pf. 
ἀφιστίμι με with a neut. pl. subject
ἀλλήλων...μέσου: from...; gen. separation
ἡ: than

29 τοῦ μικροῦ, τοῦ μεγάλου, τοῦ ᾠσοῦ: all 
gen. of separation; add verb ἀφέστηκεν

30 πρὸς...μέσου: to...; closely after ὀμοιότητις 
ἐνιοί ἄκροις: for...; dat. of interest

31 ὡς: as (for example); clause of comparison 
tῇ θρασύτητι (ὁμοιότητις τις φαίνεται): 
for...; ellipsis; dat. of interest

32 τῇ ἁσωτίᾳ (ὁμοιότητις τις φαίνεται): 
for...; ellipsis; dat. of interest
tοῖς δὲ ἄκροις: but for...; dat. of interest

33 πλείοτηθ: the greatest; ‘most’
tὰ...ἀπέχοντα: those...; nom. subj.
πλείοτοι: the most; i.e. most apart; a 
superlative adv.

34 ὀρίζονται (ἑιναί): pres. pass. + nom. pred. 
ὡστε...: so that...; result clause 
kαὶ μᾶλλον: even more; modifies ἐναντία 
tὰ...ἀπέχοντα: those...; nom. subj. 
πλείον: more; comparative adv.

35 πρὸς...: in relation to...
ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον ἐφ’ ὃν μὲν ἡ ἐλλευψίς ἐφ’ ὃν δὲ ἡ ὑπερβολή, ὅλον ἀνδρεία μὲν ὅχι ἡ θρασύτης ὑπερβολή ὀσσά, ἀλλ’ ἡ δείλια ἐλλευψίς ὀσσά, τῇ δὲ σωφροσύνῃ ὅχι ἡ ἄνασθησία ἐνδεια ὀσσά, ἀλλ’ ἡ ἀκολοχία ὑπερβολή ὀσσά. διὰ δύο δ’ αἰτίας τούτω συμβαίνει, μίαν μὲν τὴν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος· τῷ γὰρ ἐγγύτερον ἐστι καὶ ὁμοίότερον τῷ ἐτερῶν ἄκρων τῷ μέσῳ, οὐ τούτῳ ἀλλὰ τοῦναντίων ἀντιτίθεμεν μᾶλλον· ὅλον ἐπεὶ ὁμοίότερον ἐστι τῇ ἀνδρείᾳ ἡ θρασύτης καὶ ἐγγύτερον, ἀνομοίότερον δ’ ἡ δείλια, ταύτην μᾶλλον ἀντιτίθεμεν· τὰ γὰρ ἀπέχουντα πλείον τοῦ μέσου ἐναντιώτερα δοκεῖ ἐναντίον. μία μὲν ὅχι τῇ δείλια ἀυτῇ, ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος· ἐτέρα δὲ ἐξ ἡμῶν.

1 ἐ(τι) ὃν μὲν... ἐ(τι) ὃν δὲ: in some cases...in other cases...
2 οὖν: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’ ἀνδρεία μὲν...: for...; dat. of interest ἡ θρασύτης (ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον) ὑπερβολὴ ὀσσα: by...; causal pres. pple εἰμί
3 ἡ δείλια (ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον) ἐλλευψίς ὀσσα: by...; causal pres. pple εἰμί τῇ δὲ σωφροσύνῃ...ὀσσα: but for...; for grammar, see the notes for ll. 2-3 above
5 (διὰ) μίαν μὲν (αἰτίαν): (for) one (reason); the second reason mentioned in ll. 11-12
6 τὴν αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος: in attributive position modifying (αἰτίαν); αὐτοῦ is intensive
7 τῷ γὰρ ἐγγύτερον...ἀκρών τῷ μέσῳ: because of one extreme being...; a lengthy articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause; τῷ ἄκρων is acc. subj.
7 τῷ μέσῳ: to.; dat. of special adj., in this case both the comparative adjs.
8 ἐγγύς: near to (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 3
9 οὖν: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’ ἀντιτίθεμεν: we set opposite (to the mean) οὖν: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’ ὁμοίότερον, ἐγγύτερον: both neuter nom. pred.because they refer to τὸ ἄκρων
10 αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος: in attributive position modifying (αἰτίαν); αὐτοῦ is intensive
11 αὐτοῦ τοῦ μέσου: from...; abl. of separation governed by ἀπέχουσα
12 ἐτέρα (αἰτία ἐστί): this (is)...; the end of the description started in line 5
10 τῇ δείλια ἀντιτίθεμεν: we set opposite (to the mean)
11 τὰ ἀπέχουσα: those...; nom. subj. πλείον: more; comparative adv. modifying τὰ ἀπέχουσα
11 τὸ μέσον: from...; abl. of separation governed by ἀπέχουσα μία...αὐτῆ (ἐστί): this (is)...; the end of the description started in line 5
12 ἐτέρα (αἰτία ἐστί): this (is)...; the end of the description started in line 5

36
αὐτών· πρὸς ἂ γὰρ αὐτοὶ μᾶλλον πεφύκαμεν πως, ταῦτα μᾶλλον ἑναινία τῷ μέσῳ φαινεται. οἶνον αὐτοὶ μᾶλλον πεφύκαμεν πρὸς τὰς ἱδρυνας, διὸ εὐκαταφορώτεροι ἐσμεν πρὸς ἀκολοσίαν ἢ πρὸς κοσμιμότητα. ταυτ' ὄν μᾶλ- λον ἑναινία λέγομεν, πρὸς ἃ ἢ ἐπίθοισι μᾶλλον γίνεται· καὶ διὰ τούτο ἢ ἀκολοσία ὑπερβολὴ οὖσα ἑναινιωτέρα ἐστὶ τῇ σωφροσύνῃ.

9. ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετή ἡ ἠθική μεσότης, καὶ πῶς, καὶ ὅτι μεσότης δύο κακῶν, τῆς μὲν καθ ὑπερβολὴν τῆς δὲ κατ' ἕλλεψιν, καὶ ὅτι τοιαύτη ἐστὶ διὰ τὸ στοχαστικὴ τοῦ μέσου εἶνα τοῦ ἐν τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ἐν ταῖς πράξεσιν, ἰκανώς εἰρηται. διὸ καὶ ἔργον ἐστὶ σπουδαῖον εἶναι. ἐν ἐκάστῳ

δύο: two, 6
ἐπι-δοσις, -εως ἢ: progress, advance, 1
eὖ-κατάφορος: easily prone or inclined, 2
ἡθικός, -η,-ον: ethical, moral, 6

13 πρὸς ἃ: to which...; or 'in regard to...' the antecedent is the nom. pl. ταῦτα
αὐτοῖ: intensive modifying 1p subject
πεφύκαμεν: we are disposed by nature; ‘have grown by nature’ pf. act. pple φύω
14 τῷ μέσῳ: to...; dat. of special adj.
οἶνον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
αὐτοῖ...πεφύκαμεν: see not above
ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί
16 ταῦτα (εἶναι): that these (are)....; ind. disc. ἑναινία: opposite (to the mean)
17 πρὸς ἂ...γίνεται: toward which momentum occurs more (for us); ταῦτα is the antecedent
18 ὑπερβολὴ οὖσα: pple εἰμί
19 τῇ σωφροσύνῃ: dat. of special adj.
20 ὅτι: that...; a series of ind. disc. and questions governed by εἰρηται, pf. pass.

ικανός: sufficiently, adequately, 1
κοσμιμότης, -ητος, ἢ: orderliness, propriety, 1
σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9
στοχαστικός, -η,-ον: able to aim and hit, 3

λέγω in line 24
ἡ ἠθική: adj. in attributive position modifying ἀρετή, not the pred. μεσότης
πῶς: ind. question, supply entire clause from the previous ὅτι clause
21 μεσότης (ἡ ἀρετή ἐστίν): ellipsis
τῆς μὲν...τῆς δὲ: one...the other; partitive apposition to gen. pl. κακίων
κατ(ά)... in respect to...
22 τὸ...εἶναι: articular inf. (-ing)
στοχαστική: nom. pred. of εἶναι + gen.
23 τοῦ ἐν τοῖς...πράξεσιν: prepositional phrases in attributive position modifying τοῦ μέσου, the gen. obj. of στοχαστική
24 εἰρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
ἔργον: the task; i.e the challenge
σπουδαῖον εἶναι: to be good; inf. as subject ἐν ἐκάστῳ: in each thing; i.e. in everything
γάρ τὸ μέσον λαβεῖν ἔγρων, οἷον κύκλου τὸ μέσον οὐ παν-
tός ἀλλὰ τοῦ εἴδότος: οὗτοι δὲ καὶ τὸ μὲν ὀργισθῆναι παν-
tός καὶ ράδιον, καὶ τὸ δοῦναί ἀργύριον καὶ διαπανήσαι:
tὸ δὲ ὑπὸ καὶ ὄσον καὶ ὅτε καὶ ὧν ἔνεκα καὶ ὧς, οὐκέτι παν-
tός οὐδὲ ράδιον: διότερ πο οὐ καὶ σπάνιον καὶ ἐπανετὸν καὶ
καλὸν. διὸ δεῖ τὸν στοχαζόμενον τοῦ μέσου πρῶτον μὲν
ἀποχωρεῖν τοῦ μᾶλλον ἐναντίου, καθάπερ καὶ Ἡ Καλυψῶ
παρανεῖ

τούτου μὲν καπνοῦ καὶ κύματος ἐκτὸς ἐρευγε
νη.

(Οδ. 12.219)

τῶν γάρ ἄκρων τὸ μέν ἐστιν ἀμαρτωλότερον τὸ δὲ ἦττον:
ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῦ μέσου τυχεῖν ἄκρως χαλεπῶν, κατὰ τὸν δεῖ-
tερον, φασὶ, πλοῦν τὰ ἐλάχιστα λητέον τῶν κακῶν τούτο

25 τὸ μέσον λαβεῖν: to achieve the middle; inf. subject; aor. inf. λαμβάνω
ἔργον (ἐστίν): is the task; i.e. the challenge οἷον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
κύκλου τὸ μέσον (λαβεῖν): add inf. above οὐ παντὸς ἀλλὰ τοῦ εἴδότος: (is) not of everyone but of one who knows; ‘belongs not to everyone but to the one who knows’
gen. possession as pred. (S1304); pple οἶδα
26 τὸ ὀργισθῆναι (ἐστίν): articular inf., aor. pass. inf. ὄργιζω; add linking verb
παντὸς: of everyone; ‘belongs to everyone’
27 τὸ δοῦνα...διαπανήσαι (ἐστίν παντὸς καὶ ράδιον): nom. sg. articular inf., aor. inf. διαπανήσατε and διαπανήσατε; add verb and pred.
28 τὸ δὲ ὑπὸ (ἐστίν...): ὅτε: to (do this) to whom (one ought) and to the extent (one ought) and when (one ought) and for the sake of
καθ-ἀπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
Καλυψῶ, Ἡ: Calypso, 1 καπνὸς, ὁ: smoke, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, ring; circumstances, 2
κύμα, ὁ-στος, τὸ: wave; flood, 2
ληπτέος, -ον: to be taken or received, 3
ναῦς, νεώς, Ἡ: a ship, boat, 1
πλοῦς (πλοῦς) ὁ: sailing, voyage, 1
ῥαδίος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7
σπάνιος, -α, -ον: scarce, rare, 1
στοχαζόμαι: to aim at (gen) 1

33 τὸ τοῦτο...ἐπεί: no more, no longer, no further, 4
παρανεῖ: to advise, recommend, 1
πλοῦς (πλοῦς) ὁ: sailing, voyage, 1
ράδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7
σπάνιος, -α, -ον: scarce, rare, 1
στοχαζόμαι: to aim at (gen) 1

which (one ought) and how (one ought); an articular inf. (verb missing) with multiple clauses in the attributive position; add δὲ (ἐστίν) οὐκέτι παντὸς οὐδὲ ράδιον: see l. 25
39 τὸ εὗ (ἐστίν): the good (is)
τὸν στοχαζόμενον...ἀποχωρεῖν: that the one...; ind. disc.
31 τοῦ μᾶλλον ἐναντίου: from...; separation τούτου...νη: keep the ship out beyond this spray and surf; to Odysseus: steer away from Charybdis and closer to Scylla
33 τὸ μὲν...τὸ δὲ: one...the other...
34 τυχεῖν: to attain + partitive gen. χαλεπὸν (ἐστίν): (it is...; impersonal κατ...: in accordance with the 2nd best way to sail, as they say; i.e. oars when wind dies
35 ληπτέον (ἐστίν): we must take; cf. 1107a32
δ' ἐσται μάλιστα τούτον τὸν τρόπον ὃν λέγομεν. σκοπεῖν δὲ
dei prós α καὶ αὐτῷ εὐκατάφοροι ἐσμέν· ἄλλοι γὰρ
prós ἄλλα πεφύκαμεν· τούτῳ δ' ἐσται γνώριμον ἐκ τῆς
ηδονῆς καὶ τῆς λύπης τῆς γνωμένης περὶ ἦμᾶς. εἰς τούναυ-
tίον δ' ἐαυτοῖς ἀφέλκειν δεῖ· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπάγοντες τοῦ
ἀμαρτάνειν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἥξομεν, ὥσπερ εἰ τὰ διεστραμμένα
τῶν ξύλων ὀρθοῦτες ποιοῦσιν. ἐν παντὶ δὲ μάλιστα φυλα-
κτέον τὸ ἴδιο καὶ τὴν ἴδιον· οὐ γὰρ ἀδέκαστοι κρώμονε
αὐτήν. ὥσπερ ὅδε οἱ δημογέροντες ἐπαθον πρὸς τὴν Ἐλένην,
tούτῳ δὲ παθεῖν καὶ ἦμας πρὸς τὴν ἴδιον, καὶ ἐν πάσι
τὴν ἐκείνου ἐπιλέγειν φωνῆν· οὕτω γὰρ αὐτὴν ἀποπεμπο-
μένου ἦττον ἀμαρτησόμεθα. ταῦτ' ὅν ποιοῦντες, ὡς ἐν

ά-δέκαστος, -ον: impartial, unbridled, 1
ἀπ-διγμ: to lead away, carry off, 1
ἀπο-πέμπτω: to send away, dismiss, 1
ἀφ-ἐλκω: to drag away, 1
γνώρισμοι, -ον: known, recognizable, 2
δημο-γέρων, -οντος: elder (of the people), 1
δια-στρέψω: twist, bend (in different ways), 1
ἐκείνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
Ἑλένη, ἡ: Helen, 1
ἐπι-λέγω: to speak on, attribute, apply, 2
εὐ-κατάφορος: easily prone or inclined, 2

1 τούτῳ δὲ (ληπτεόν) ἐσται...λέγομεν: this
will certainly have to be taken up in this
way which we are saying; verbal adj from
the previous clause + fut. εἰμι expressing
necessity; τὸν τρόπον is an adverbial acc.

2 πρός δὲ: in regard to what...
αὐτό: intensive modifying 1p subject
ἐσμέν: 1p pres. εἰμι
ἄλλοι πρός ἄλλα: some (of us)...to some
(VICES), others (of us)...to other (VICES)

3 πεφύκαμεν: are disposed by nature;
‘have grown by nature’ 1p pf. act. pple φυ
ἐσται: fut. εἰμι

4 περὶ ἦμας: i.e. that we feel
τὸ (ἐ)ναυτόν: i.e. opposite extreme

5 ἐαυτοῖς: ourselves; ‘themselves,’ the
reflexive refers to ἄλλοι but is 1p in sense
πολὺ ἀπάγοντες: by drawing far away;
adverbial acc.; pres. pple is causual in sense
τοῦ ἀμαρτάνειν: from...; articular inf. and

ётον: comparative adv. ἦττων

ἡκώ: to have come, be present, 3
κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
ξύλον, τό: wood, 1
ὁρθῶ: to set upright, straighten, 1
ὀσπέρ, ὁπερ, ὀστο: the very one who, very
thing which, 9
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5
φυλακτέως, -ον: to be watched or guarded, 1
φωνή, ἡ: sound; speech, voice, 3

gen. of separation; i.e. the extreme

ἐκ: to (acting)' expression' or 'feel'

οἱ...ὁρθοῦτες: those...; i.e a carpenter

τὰ διεστραμμένα: the warped parts; pf.
pass. pple

7 ἐν παντὶ: in everything

φυλακτέον (ἐστιν): (we) must...; ‘(it is) to
be...(by us)” impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμι
expressing necessity, often translated
actively; adj. governs an acc. obj. (S2152)

8 τὸ ἴδιο: the pleasant; or ‘what is pleasant’

9 ὀστο: just as; ‘which very thing’

ἐπαθον: aor. πάσχω. ‘experience’ or ‘feel’

10 παθεῖν: aor. inf. πάσχω

καὶ: also, too; adv.

ἐπιλέγειν φωνῆν: (that we) apply their
words; ‘speak’ in addition to (acting)’
κρίσις, ἑπτάνω, μᾶλιστα δινησόμεθα τοῦ μέσου τυγχάνειν.
χαλεπτὸν δ ἰσως τούτο, καὶ μάλιστ' ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἐκκαθοντ' οὐ
gὰρ ράδιον διορίσαι καὶ πῶς καὶ τίς καὶ ἐπὶ ποῖς καὶ πά-
σον χρόνον ὅργυστέων καὶ γὰρ ἡμέις ὥτε μὲν τοὺς ἐλλειπο-
tας ἐπαινοῦμεν καὶ πράους φαίμεν, ὥτε δὲ τοὺς χαλεπαί-
νυνται ἀνδρώθεις ἀποκαλοῦντες. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν μικρὸν τοῦ εὖ
παρεκβαίνων οὐ ψέγεται, οὔτ' ἐπὶ τὸ μᾶλλον οὔτ' ἐπὶ τὸ
ἥττον, ὁ δὲ πλέον' οὕτως γὰρ οὐ λανθανεί. ὁ δὲ μέχρι τίνος
καὶ ἐπὶ πόσον ψεκτός οὐ βράδιον τῷ λόγῳ ἀφοίρισαι' οὐδὲ
γὰρ ἀλλο οὐδὲν τῶν αἰσθητῶν τὰ δὲ τοιαύτα ἐν τοῖς καθ'
ἐκαστα, καὶ ἐν τῇ αἰσθήσει ἡ κρίσις. τὸ μὲν ἀρα τοσοῦτο
δηλοὶ ὅτι ἡ μέση ἐξίς ἐν πάσῳ ἐπαινετῆ, ἀποκλίνει δὲ

13 ὡς...ἐπειν: so as to speak in sum
tυγχάνειν: to attain + partitive gen.
14 χαλεπτόν (ἐστίν)
ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἐκαστον: in particular cases;
'in those each by each'

15 καὶ πῶς...ὁριστέον: a series of ind.
16 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact

17 ψαμέν: we call (them)...: pres. ἡμεί with a
double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.

λανθάνω: to escape notice; pass. forget, 1
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2
ὁργιστέον, -ον: to be angered, made angry, 1
ἁτέ: sometimes, at times (ποτέ), 9
παρεκβαίνω: to deviate, step aside, 1
πόσον, -α, -ον: how much, many or great, 4
πρᾶδος, -ον: gentle, mild, 3
ῥάδιον, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7
προούτοι, -αττίν, -ούτο: so great, so many, 3
χαλεπαίνω: to be sore, angry, grievous, 1
χρόνος, α: time, 3
ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8
ψεκτός, -ον: blameworthy, 3

tοὺς χαλεπαίνουντας (ἐπαινούμεν): ellipsis

18 ἀποκαλοῦντες: calling (them) (y)

19 ὁ μὲν...παρεκβαίνων: the one...; pres. pple
μικρὸν: a little; inner acc. (slight deviation)
τοῦ εὖ: from the good; separation

20 ὁ δὲ...ψεκτός: Up to what point and for

21 ὁ δὲ...ψεκτός: Up to what point and for

22 τὰ τοιαύτα: such (depend) on particulars

23 ἡ κρίσις: the decision (depends) on...

24 δηλοί: is clear (namely) that...; 3s δηλόω
δεῖ ὅτε μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν ὅτε δ’ ἐπὶ τὴν ἐλλεψιν
οὕτω γὰρ βῆστα τοῦ μέσου καὶ τοῦ εὖ τευξόμεθα.

ΗΘΙΚΩΝ ΝΙΚΟΜΑΧΕΙΩΝ Γ

1. Τῆς ἀρετῆς δὴ περὶ πάθη τε καὶ πράξεως οὖσης, καὶ
ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς ἀκούσιοις ἐπαίνων καὶ ψόγων γνωμέων, ἐπὶ
dὲ τοῖς ἀκούσιοις συγγνώμης, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ἐλέου, τὸ ἐκού-
σιον καὶ τὸ ἀκούσιον ἀναγκαίον ἱσως διορίσαι τοῖς περὶ ἀρετῆς
ἐπισκόπουσι, χρῆσμον δὲ καὶ τοῖς νομοθετοῦσι πρὸς τε τὰς
τιμὰς καὶ τὰς κολάσεις. δοκεὶ δὴ ἀκούσια εἶναι τὰ βία

ἀκούσιος, -ον: unvoluntary; unwilling, 9
ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 3
βία, βίας, ἦ: compulsion, force, 4
dι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, 6
ἐκούσια, ἦ: voluntary behavior, 8
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3
ἐν-οτε: sometimes, from time to time, 4
ἐπαινος, ὁ: praise, approval, commendation, 3
ἐπι-σκοπέω: to consider, examine, 2
κόλασις, -εως, ὁ: punishment, corrections, 2
νομο-θετέω: to make laws, 2
ὁτε: sometimes, at times (ποτε), 9
ῥήστα: most easily, 2
συγ-γνώμη, ἦ: forgiveness, pardon, 3
τιμῆ, ἦ: honor; state offices, 8
χρήσιμος, -ης, -ον: useful, serviceable, 1
ψόγος, ὁ: blame, censure, 2

25 ὅτε μὲν…ὅτε δὲ: sometimes…sometimes
ἐπὶ… to..., in the direction of...
26 τευξόμεθα: fut. mid. τυγχάνω + partitive
gen.
30 Τῆς ἀρετῆς…οὖσης: gen. abs.
31 ἐπὶ…ἐκούσιοις: in voluntary (actions)
ἐπαίνων…γνωμέων: gen. abs.
ἐπὶ…ἀκούσιοις: in involuntary (actions)
32 συγγνώμης (γνωμένης)…ἐλέου
(γνωμένου): gen. abs., supply the pples
καὶ: even
τὸ ἐκούσιον: Voluntary
tὸ ἀκούσιον: Involuntary
33 ἀναγκαίον (ἐστι): (it is)...; impersonal +
aor. inf.
τοῖς…ἐπισκόπουσι: for those...; dat. pl. of
interest, pres. pple
34 χρῆσμον (ἐστιν): (it is)...; impersonal
τοῖς νομοθετοῦσι: for those...; dat. pl. of
interest, pres. pple
πρὸς: in regard to...
35 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
ἀκούσια: involuntary (actions); neut. pl.
subj. of 3s verb
τὰ…γνώμενα is acc. subj.
βία: because of; ; abl. of cause
1. **ἀμφιβαθήτητας, -εως** ἢ: dispute, controversy, 1
2. **ἀπασ, ἀπασα, ἀπαν**: every, all, quite all, 5
3. **ἀπο-βάλλω**: to throw away, 1
4. **ἀπο-θνήσκο**: to die, die off, perish, 4
5. **βιασμος, -α, -ον**; compulsory, forcible, 6
6. **γονευσ, -έως, ὃ**: a begetter, parent, 1
7. **ἐκ-βολη, ἢ**: outlet; a casting out, ejection, 1
8. **ἐκούσα, ἢ**: voluntary behavior, 8
9. **ἐκόνω, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν**: voluntarily, willing, 8
10. **ἐξε-θεν**: from without, 2
11. **κομίζω**: to convey, carry; travel, journey, 2
12. **κοινας, κοινων**: larger, greater, 4
13. **μικτος, -η, -ον**: mixed, 1

1. **βιασον (ἐστίν): A compulsory act (is);**

2. **οὐ ἢ ἀρχη (ἐστίν) ἐξεσθεν**: (that whose origin...); relative clause; the missing antecedent is nom. pred.

3. **οὐς ἤ**: pple ἐμι modifying ἀρχη

4. **μηδὲν: nothing at all; inner acc.

5. **ἡ ὁ πάχων** or (actually) the one...; pple, Aristotle is simply clarifying ὁ πάχων and not including a second, distinct person

6. **οὐν**: for example; 'in respect to which sort'

7. **εἰ πνεύμα...δυνεμε**: if the wind or men being in power should convey (someone); i.e. in a ship; 3s aor. opt. κομίζω

8. **ἀνείρτηται: but as many (actions) as...; relative clause with no antecedent; neut. pl. subj. and 3s pass. verb

9. **οὐν**: for example; 'in respect to which sort'

10. **πράσσεται: should order (a man); 3s

11. **νος, ὃ**: sense; mind, attention, 4

12. **πνευμα, -ατος, το: breath, wind, blast, 1

13. **πειρασ: to somewhere, somewhere, 1

14. **πότερος, -α, -ον**: whether, which (of two)? 5

15. **προσ-τάττω**: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5

16. **συμ-βαινω**: to happen, occur, result, 8

17. **συμ-βάλλω**: to contribute; join in battle, 3

18. **σφιξω**: to save, keep, preserve, 4

19. **σωτηρία, ἢ**: preservation, saving a life, 5

20. **τέκνων, τό: a child, 2

21. **τύραννων, δ: sovereign, tyrant, 1

22. **φόβως, ὃ**: fear, terror, panic, 8

23. **χειμων, -όνως, ὃ**: winter, stormy weather, 1

pres. opt.; supply the obj.

24. **πράσσει**: aor. inf. πράττω

25. **κύριος: in power over + gen.; nom. pred. of pres. pple εἰμί; i.e. over the man's family

26. **πράξαντος**: (if the man)...; gen. abs. conditional in sense

27. **σφιξοντο: they should be...; 3p pass. opt.

28. **μη πράξαντος**: (if the man)...; gen. abs. conditional in sense

29. **ἀποδοθήσκο: they should...; 3p pres. opt.

30. **ἔχει: there is...

31. **πότερον...ἡ: whether...or...; ind. question

32. **καὶ περὶ τας...ἐκβολας: also concerning cargo cast out in a storm; i.e. in a ship

33. **ἐπὶ σωτηρία δ: but for the safety...

34. **ἀυτός: his own; εαυτοῦ, reflexive

35. **ἀπαντες...ἔχοντες: all having sense (would do so); i.e. throw off cargo

36. **καταρτισμος: the state in which a good man's actions can be...
13 κατά τὸν καιρὸν ἔστιν: varies according to the occasion
14 καὶ τὸ ἐκούσιον...: therefore (an action) must be called Voluntary and Involuntary (at the time) when one does it; ‘it is to be called...’ ἐκτέουν is a verbal adj. + εἰμι expressing necessity; δὴ is inferential
15 πράττει δὲ ἐκών: and (in this case) he...; Aristotle returns to the example in II. 9-12
16 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact
17 ἡ ἀρχή: the source
tοῦ κινεῖν: articular inf. (-ing)
18 τὰ τοιαύτα (ἐστίν)
19 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
20 ταῖς τοιαύταις: in attributive position modifying πράξει
21 καὶ ἐπαινοῦνται: (people) are even praised... ὑπομένοντες: whenever...; general temporal clause with pres. subj.; the subject remains ‘people’ in general
22 (ἐ)δὲ ἀνάπαλιν: if in the opposite way; i.e. if not for something great and noble
23 ἐπὶ: for...; expressing purpose
24 πράξῃ: someone does; 3s aor. subj.
τίς ἃ μὴ δεῖ, ἢ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην φύσιν ὑπερτείναι καὶ μη- 
δεῖς ἢ υπομείναι. ἐνα δ᾽ ἱσώς οὐκ ἔστω ἀναγκασθῆναι,
ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀποθανετέον παθόντι τὰ δεινότατα· καὶ 
γὰρ τὸν Εὐριπίδου Ἀλκμαιόνα γελοία φαίνεται τὰ ἀναγ-
κάσαντα μητροκτόνησαι. ἐστὶ δὲ χαλεψὲν ἐνίοτε διακρῖναι 
ποίον ἀντὶ ποίου ἀιρετέον καὶ τί ἀντὶ τίνος ὑπομενετέον, ἐστὶ 
δὲ χαλεπώτερον ἀμείβεται τοῖς γνωσθέοις· ὡς γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ 
πολὺ ἐστὶ τὰ μὲν προσδοκώμενα λυπηρά, ὡς δ᾽ ἀναγκάζο-
ται αἰσχρά, ὀθὲν ἐπαινοῦ καὶ ψόγου γίνονται περὶ τοὺς

αἱρετέος, -ου: to be chosen, 2
Ἄλκαιος, ὁ: Alcmaeon, 1
ἀναγκάζο: to force, compel, require, 8
ἀνθρώπινος, -ης, -ου: human, of a human, 2
ἀντί: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
ἀποθανετέον, -εος: to be died off; must die, 1
γελοίος, -ας, -ου: laughable, ridiculous, 3
γιγνώσκω: to learn, perceive, decide, 3
δεινός, -ης, -ου: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
dia-κρίνω: decide, settle; distinguish, 2

25 ἃ μὴ δεῖ (πράττειν): what...; ‘(things) which...’ relative clause, the missing antecedent is obj. of πράξει
ἀ...ὑπομέναιν: which...; relative clause, the antecedent is τοιοῦτα

26 ἃ ὑπομέναιν: would...; 3s aor. potential opt. ὑπομένω
ἔναι: some (actions)
ἐστιν: it is possible
ἀναγκασθεῖν (πράττειν): that (anyone)...; aor. pass. inf.; add an acc. subject

27 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον: but rather
ἀποθανετέον (ἐστίν): one must...; ‘(it is to be...by one)’ verbal adj. + εἰμι governing a dat. of agent
παθόντι: by one...; aor. pple πάσχω, dat. of agent of the verbal adj. (if the verbal adj. is translated actively, make the agent the subject)

τὰ δεινότατα: substantive, superlative adj. καὶ γὰρ: for in fact

28 τὸν...Ἀλκμαιόνα: obj. of τὰ ἀναγκάστα

ἐμένω: to abide by or in; remain fixed, 1
ἐν-οτε: sometimes, from time to time, 4
ἐπαινοῦ, ὁ: praise, approval, commendation, 3
Εὐριπίδης, -ου, ὁ: Euripides (the tragedian), 1
μητροκτόνησαι: aor. inf.

29 ἐστι χαλεπτὸν: it is...; impersonal diakrίναι: aor. inf.

30 ποίον ἀντὶ ποίου ἀιρετέο (ἐστίν): what sort of thing (is)...; ind. question with verbal adj.; ἀντί means ‘instead of...’
τί ἀντὶ τίνος ὑπομενετέο (ἐστίν): what (is) to be...; ind. question parallel to above;

χαλεπώτερον (ἐστίν): it is...; impersonal ἐμέναι: aor. inf.

τοῖς γνωσθέοις: in...; dat. of compound verb; dat. pl. aor. pass. pple, ‘decide’
ἀ...ἐπί τὸ πολὺ. for the most part; or ‘in general’

32 τὰ προσδοκώμενα: the things...; i.e. punishments

32 δ᾽ ἀναγκάζονται: (the things) which...; relative clause, the antecedent is subject
αἰσχρά (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
Moral Virtue is Voluntary (III.1)

1. toûs ánagkasoîntas: those (people)…; aor. pass. pple
   μὴ (ánagkasoîntas): those (not)…; μὴ is used instead of οὐ because the pple is conditional in sense
   tâ poia: what sort of actions…?
2. opôte én…h…sumbálλintai: whenever…;
   general temporal clause, 3s pres. subj, eîmî
toîs ektoû: things outside; i.e. the agent;
   preposition in the attributive position
3. à…: what…; ‘(actions) which…”
   kàbîl(os)ota: in themselves
   vûn ì: but as it is…

4. ãnti tòvûnê: instead of these (alternatives)
   aîrêtô (éstîn)
   hâ arxhî: the source

5. ekouia, hî: voluntary behavior, 8
   ektoû: outside; out of, far from (+ gen.), 3
   ì: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 1
   vûn: now; as it is, 7
   òde, hêre, tôde: this, this here, 2
   opôte: when, by what time, 1
   râdîios, -â, -ov: easy, ready, 7
   συμβάλλω: to contribute; join in battle, 3
   fâteto, -ov: to be said or called, 3
6. xâris, hî: favor; xârin + gen. for the sake of, 1
   tò pràttontai: the one…; pres. pple
7. âkouia, hî…ekouia: (these actions) are involuntary…voluntary; the subject is the entire relative clause ἂ… in ll. 3-4
   vûn ì: but as it is…
   ãnti tòvûnê: instead of these (alternatives)
   5 (ēleû) wv toîs karh’ ekastà: (are engaged) in particulars; ‘those each by each,’
   tâunta (éstîn): i.e. particulars; subject
   7 poia…aîrêteîn: what sort (of actions)…;
   ind. question governed by ἀποδοῦναι
   aîrêteîn (éstîn): must (we)…; verbal adj.
8. râdîios (éstîn)
   ἀποδοῦναι: aor. inf.
9. eî…faînê…ën eîpî: if…should, would…; fut.
   less vivid (eî opt., ëv + opt.); opt. fêmî, eîmî
tâ hêdâ…ëlînai: that…; ind. disc.
10. aîtô: for him; dat. of interest
11. tòvûnê: obj. of xârîn; i.e. hêdâ and karhâ
12. oî mên bia kai âkôntes (prâttontes)
   lûtporîs (prâttontai): act in pain

ánagkaseîntas ἡ μῆ. τὰ δὴ poia fâtêov bîaia; ἡ ἀπλῶς
mên, ὁπότ’ ἄν ἡ αἰτία ἐν τοῖς ἐκτὸς ἡ καὶ ὁ πράττων μη- 
deu sumbállintai; ἃ δὲ καθ’ αὐτὰ μὲν ἄκουσιά ἐστι, νῦν
dὲ καὶ ἀντὶ τῶν ἄρετα, καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ ἐν τῷ πράττοντι, 
καθ’ αὐτὰ μὲν ἄκουσιά ἐστι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἀντὶ τῶν ἔκουσια. 
μᾶλλον δ’ ἐσκεν ἐκουσίως: αἱ γὰρ πράξεις ἐν τοῖς καθ’ 
ἐκαστα, ταῦτα δ’ ἐκουσία. poia δ’ ἀντὶ ποιῶν ἄρετεον, οὐ
ῥάδιον ἀποδοῦναι πόλλαὶ γὰρ διαφορᾶ ἑσών ἐν τοῖς καθ’ 
ἐκαστα. εἰ δὲ τις τὰ ἡδεὰ καὶ τὰ καλὰ φαῖν βίαια
ἐλναι (ἀναγκάζεω γὰρ ἐξ ὄντα), πάντα ἄν εἰ ἀυτὸ 
βίαια· τοῦτων γὰρ χάρων πάντες πάντα πράττοσιν. καὶ οἱ
μὲν βία καὶ ἄκοντες λυπηρῶς, οὶ δὲ διὰ τὸ ἡδῶ καὶ 

aîrêteîn, -ov: to be chosen, 2
aîrêtoû, -hû, -ov: choiceworthy, chosen, 5
aîtia, hî: reason, cause, responsibility, 7
âkouia, -oua, -ov: involuntary, unwilling, 8
ánagkâzô: to force, compel, require, 8
ánthi: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
âpò-dîmô: to render, exhibit, give back, 5
bîa, bîas, hî: compulsion, force, 4
bîaîos, -â, -ov: compulsory, forcible, 6
dia-dîrâ, hî: difference, 2

11b
λόν μεθ' ἡδονής: γελοίον δὲ τὸ αἰτιάσθαι τὰ ἐκτός, ἀλλὰ μὴ αὐτὸν εὐθήρατον ὑπὸ τῶν τοιούτων, καὶ τῶν μὲν καλῶν ἐαυτὸν, τῶν δὲ αἰσχρῶν τὰ ἡδέα. ἔσκε δὴ τὸ βί-

to δὲ δ’ ἄγνοιαν οὖχ ἐκούσιον μὲν ἀπαν ἐστὶν, ἀκού-

σιον δὲ τὸ ἐπιλυπον καὶ ἐν μεταμελείᾳ: ὁ γὰρ δ’ ἄγνοιαν πράξας ὁτιοῦν, μὴδὲν τι δυσχεραίνων ἐπὶ τῇ πράξει, ἐκὼ

μὲν οὐ πέπραχεν, ὃ γε μὴ ἣδει, οὐδ’ αὖ ἄκων, μὴ λυπο-

μενός γε. τοῦ δὴ δ’ ἄγνοιαν ὁ μὲν ἐν μεταμελείᾳ ἄκων

dokei, ὃ δὲ μὴ μεταμελόμενος, ἐπεὶ ἐτερος, ὥστω οὖχ ἐκὼν-

ἐπεὶ γὰρ διαφέρει, βέλτιον ὅνομα ἔχειν ἰδιον. ἐτερον δ’

αἰτιάσαμα: to blame; accuse, charge, 1
ἀκούσιος, -ov: involuntary; unwilling, 9
ἀκων, -oouv, -ov: involuntary, unwilling, 8
ἅπα, ἁπάσα, ἁπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 2
βελτίων, -oov (-oovs): better, 3
βίαζω: to compel, force, 1
βιασος, -oou, -ov: compulsory, forcible, 6
γελοίοις, -a, -ov: laughable, ridiculous, 3
dys-xheiraino: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3
ἐκτός: outside; out of, far from (+ gen.), 3

13 γελοίοιν (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

ta ekto: things outside (ourselves)

14 μὴ (τὸ αἰτιάσθαι) (ἐστίν): ellipsis
euvtheratou dyna: for...; ‘because of...’

πό: because of...; gen. of cause

ton kalon: for...; gen. of charge

15 (τὸ αἰτιάσθαι) ἑαυτόν: add. inf.

ton d’ aischro: but for...; gen. of charge
(τὸ αἰτιάσθαι) τὰ ἡδέα: add. inf.

δὴ: therefore, then; inferential

16 οὖ...ἡ ἄρχη (ἐστίν): whose source...;

relative clause pascho

μηδὲν...τοῦ βιασθέντος: (the one)...; gen.

abs.; τοῦ βιασθέντος, ‘the one...’ is a

substantive from the aor. pass. pple and subject of the gen. abs.

18 τὸ δὲ δ’ ἄγνοιαν (πράττειν): to (act)...;

articular inf. and subj.

ous ekousoin: not-voluntary; technical term

ekon, ekousia, ekon: voluntarily; willing, 8
exo-then: from without, 2
epi-lupos, -ov: painful, 3
euvthratos, -ov: easy to hunt down, 1
idios, -a, -ov: peculiar, private, one’s own, 5
meta-meleia, -h: regret, change of heart, 3
meta-melemai: to feel regret, repentence, 1
meta: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
ounma, -atou, to: name, 6
ostio-ous, othio-ous, oti-ous: whosoever, 5
suv-ballasso: to contribute; join in battle, 3

not equiv. to involuntary

apavan: in every case; ‘every,’ modifies subj.

19 to epilypou...meta-meleia (pratttein):

(acting)...; articular inf. and subj.

but to (act)...; perfect pascho

h...praxeas: the one...; nom. s. aor. pple

20 othioun: obj. of pple, neut. othioun

mhedon ti: not at all; adv. acc. (inner acc.)

epi...: at...; (S1689.2c)

21 pepraxein: has not...; pf. prattto

h ge...hedin: since...; a relative (here, neut.

acc. referring to the action) followed by γε

is often causal in sense; 3s plpf. othi is

translated in the simple past

oudi...akon (pepraxein): nor...; ellipsis

mhe...ge: if...; pple conditional or causal

22 h meν en meta-meleia (prasseis): subject

23 etpei eteirion: since (he is) different

eptio: let him be not-voluntary; 3s pres.

imperative eimi
Moral Virtue is Voluntary (III.1) 1110b

εὖκε καὶ τὸ δὲ ἄγνοιαν πράττειν τοῦ ἁγνοοὕντα: ὅ γὰρ μεθύοι ἡ ὀργιζόμενος οὐ δοκεῖ δὲ ἄγνοιαν πράττειν ἀλλὰ διὰ τὶ τῶν εἰρημένων, οὐκ εἰδώς δὲ ἀλλ᾽ ἁγνοοὐν. ἄγνοεὶ μὲν οὖν πᾶς ὁ μοχθηρὸς δὲ δεῖ πράττειν καὶ ὁν ἀφεκτέον, καὶ διὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀμαρτίαν ἄδικοι καὶ ὅλως κακοὶ γίνονται· τὸ δὲ ἄκουσιον βούλεται λέγεσθαι οὐκ εἰ τις ἄγνοεὶ τὰ συμφέροντα· οὗ γὰρ ἡ ἐν τῇ προαιρέσει ἁγνοια αἰτία τοῦ ἁκουσίου ἀλλὰ τῆς μοχθηρίας, οὐδὲ ἡ καθόλου (ψέγονται γὰρ διὰ γε ταύτην) ἀλλ᾽ ἡ καθ᾽ ἐκαστα, ἐν

25 ἁ-δικός,-ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7
ἀκουσίος,-ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
ἀμαρτία, ἡ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3
ἀφεκτέος,-ον: to be kept away from, 1
καθόλου: on the whole, in general, 4

25 ἐδικε...τοῦ (πράττειν) ἁγνοοὕντα: in fact to act through ignorance seems different from acting in ignorance'; τοῦ πράττειν is a gen. of comparision following ἐτέρουν; this important distinction is discussed below
27 τῶν εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐρέω)
27 εἰδός: nom. sg. pple οἴδα
28 ἃ...: what...; ’(that) which...’ the missing antecedent is obj. of ἁγνοεί ὃν: from what...; ’(that) from which,’
29 ἀφεκτέον (ἐστίν): he must...; ’(it is) to be...’ (by him)’ impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμι expressing necessity, often translated actively; ὃν is gen. separation (S2152)
29 γίνονται: they...; i.e men who are wicked; the subject shifts from 3s to 3p

25 τὸ δὲ ἁκουσίου: but Involuntary...
βούλεται λέγεσθαι οὐκ: does not wish to be mentioned; ‘does not mean,’ common idiom
31 τὰ συμφέροντα: his (true) interests; ‘the things expedient (for him)’
ἐν τῇ προαιρέσει: i.e. in respect to moral choice
αἰτία (ἐστίν): (is) cause...; nom. pred.
tοῦ ἁκουσίου: of the Involuntary
32 οὐδὲ ή καθόλου (ἁγνοια)...ἀλλὰ ή καθ᾽ ἐκαστα (ἁγνοια): nor (is the Involuntary) (ignorance) in general but (ignorance) in particular
33 ψέτονται...ταύτην: for the are blamed because of this; i.e. ignorance in general
ὁς καὶ περὶ δὴ ἡ πράξεις· ἐν τούτοις γὰρ καὶ ἔλεος καὶ συγγνώμη· ὅ γὰρ τούτων τι ἄγνωσθ' ἀκουσίως πράττει. ἵσως οὖν οὐ χείρον διορίσαι αὐτὰ, τίνα καὶ πόσα ἐστὶ, τίς τε δὴ καὶ τί καὶ περὶ τί ἢ ἐν τίνι πράττει, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ τίνι, οἷς ὁργάνω, καὶ ἕνεκα τίνος, οἷς σωτηρίας, καὶ πῶς, οἷς ήρέμα η ἑσφόδρα. ἀπαντά μὲν οὖν ταῦτα οὐδέκα ἂν ἄγνωσθει μὴ μανωθεὶς, δηλοῦ δ' ὡς οὐδὲ τὸν πράττοντα· πῶς γὰρ ἑαυτὸν γε; δὴ δὲ πράττει ἄγνωσθειν ἂν τις, οἷς “λέγοντες φασιν ἐκπεσεῖν αὐτοὺς”, ἢ οὐκ εἰδέναι ὅτι ἀπόρρητα ἵν, ἂσπερ Ἀἰσχύλος τὰ μυστικά, ἢ δεῖξαι βουλόμενος ἀφεῖναι, ὡς ὅ τὸν καταπέλτην. οἰνθεῖ ὧ ἄν τις καὶ τὸν ἴδιον πολέμοιν εἶναι ἂσπερ ἡ Μερόπη, καὶ ἐσφαρώσθαι

Αἰσχύλος, ὁ: Aeschylus, 1
ἀκουσίως: unwillingly, involuntarily, 2
ἀπαντα, ἀπασα, ἀπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
ἀπόρρητος, -ος: unspeakable, in secret, 1
ἀφ: to send/throw, let loose, 2
δεικνύω: to define, distinguish, 6
ἐκπέπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 1
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3
ἐνοτέ: sometimes, from time to time, 4
ἡμέ: gently, softly, quietly, 1
καταπέλτης (πάλτης), -ου, ὁ: catapult, 1

1 ἐν οἷς καὶ περὶ δὲ ἡ πράξεις (ἐστί): in which (conditions) and about which (conditions)...
in apposition to ἡ καθ' ἐκαστα
2 ὅ...ἀγνωσθ' ἀκουσίως: the one...; pres. pple
τούτων: of these; i.e. conditions in line 1
3 οὖν χείρον (ἐστί): it is not bad; ‘not worse’, διορίσαι: aor. inf.
αὐτά, τίνα καὶ πόσα ἐστὶ: what sort and how many they are; ‘them, what sort and how many they are;’ i.e. the conditions, the ignorance of which cause something involuntary: a list of interrogatives follow τίς: i.e. the agent
4 τί: i.e. the act
περὶ τί ἢ ἐν τίνι πράττει: i.e. the person or object affected or circumstances
5 τίνω: by what; i.e. instrument; dat. of means
οἷς: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’

Μαίνομαι: to mad, rage, be furious, 3
Μερόπη, ἡ: Merope, 1
μυστικός, -ῆς, -α: mystic, of the mysteries, 1
οἴσμαι (σύμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
ὁργανον, τὸ: instrument, tool, organ, 1
πολέμιος, -ος, -α: hostile, of the enemy, 2
πόσος, -ος, -α: how much, many or great, 4
σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5
ὐός (ὕσι), ὁ: son, 1
χείρον, -ου, -οντος: worse, inferior, 4

Ἐνεκα τίνως: i.e. purpose or result
πώς: i.e. the manner
6 ἀν ἀγνωσθεὶς: could...; aor. potential opt.
7 μὴ μανωθεὶς: unless mad; ‘if not being mad,’ the pple is conditional in sense
δηλοῦ (ἐστί): ὡς...: (it is) clear that;
οὐδὲ: nor yet (is he ignorant of)
τὸν πράττοντα: the one acting; i.e. the agent, mentioned in line 3
8 πῶς (ἀγνωσθεὶς ἀν τις): how (could he be ignorant of...); supply verb
δὲ πράττει: ὅτι ὅτι: oor. potential opt.
λέγοντες φασιν ἐκπεσεῖν αὐτοὺς: they say that the words slipped out while speaking
ἐδέναι: inf. οἴσα
ἐξείπαι, ἀφείπαι: aor. inf. ἐκκύμωμ, ἀφίημι
ὀπεθείπ: might...; 3s aor. dep. potential opt.
καὶ ἐπὶ σωτηρία πίσας ἀποκτείναι ἄν· καὶ θίξαι βουλόμενοι, ὦστεν οἱ ἀκροχειρίζομενοι, πατάξειν ἄν. περὶ πάντα δὴ ταῦτα τῆς ἁγνοίας οὖσης, ἐν οἷς ἦ πράξις, ὥστε τι ἁγνοῖς ἄκων δοκεῖ πεπραχέναι, καὶ ἀκούσα ἐν τοῖς κυριωτάτοις· κυριώτατα δὲ εἶναι δοκεῖ ἐν οἷς ἦ πράξις καὶ οὖ ἐνεκα. τοῦ δή κατὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἁγνοίαν ἀκούσιοι λεγομένου ἔτι δεὶ τὴν πράξιν λυπηρὰν εἶναι καὶ ἐν μετα-μελείᾳ.

Ὅταν δὲ ἀκούσιοι τοῦ βία καὶ ἀτή ἁγνοιαν, τὸ ἐκούσιον δὸξείν ἄν εἶναι οὖ ἢ ἀρχὴ ἐν αὐτῷ εἰδώτι τὰ καθ' ἐκαστὰ ἐν οἷς ἦ πράξις. ἦσος γὰρ οὐ καλὸς λέγεται ἀκούσιον.
σα ἐναι τὰ διὰ θυμὸν ἢ ἐπιθυμίαν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ
οὐδὲν ἕτι τῶν ἄλλων ζῷων ἐκουσίως πράζει, οὐδ' οἱ παιδεῖς.
ἐίτα πότερον οὐδὲν ἐκουσίως πράττομεν τῶν δ' ἐπιθυμίαν
καὶ θυμὸν, ἢ τὰ καλὰ μὲν ἐκουσίως τὰ δ' αἰσχρὰ ἄκου-
σίως; ἢ γελόιον ἐνός γε αἰτίον ὄντος; ἄτοπον δὲ ἰσως
ἀκούσαι φάναι δὲι δεί ὀργίζοσθαι· δεὶ δὲ καὶ ὀργίζοσθαι
ἐπὶ τισι καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν των, οἶον ὑγιείας καὶ μαθήσεως.
δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀκούσαι λυπηρὰ ἐναι, τὰ δὲ κατ' ἐπιθυ-
μίαν ἡδέα. ἐτι δὲ τί διαφέρει τῷ ἀκούσαι εἰναι τὰ κατὰ
λογισμὸν ἢ θυμὸν ἀμαρτηθέντα; φευκτὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄμφω,

ατίος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
ἀκοουσίος: unwillingly, involuntarily, 2
ἀμφος: both (dual), 8
δ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
γελοιος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 3
εἰς, μια, εν: one, single, alone, 9
εἰτα: then, next, and so, therefore, 2
ἐκουσίος: willingly, voluntarily, 4
ζῷον, τὸ: animal, 7

25 τὰ διὰ...ἐπιθυμίαν: (acts)...; nom. subj. of
λέγεται; both prepositional phrases are in
the attributive position; ἀκοουσία is the pred.
πρῶτον: first (if we say this); adverbial acc.
i.e if we assume that acts because of anger
ect. are involuntary, the following is true
26 οὐδὲν ἕτι: no longer any...; ‘not any still’
πράζει: fut. πράττω
27 πότερον...πράττομεν: Do we do...?; leave πότερον untranslated
τῶν...θυμῶν: of (those acts)...; partitive
28 ἢ (πράττομεν): or...; add verb from above
γελοιοῦν (ἐστίν): (this is)...
ἐνός...δυντος: since one (person)...; gen.
abs. causal in sense: ατίος, ‘responsible’
29 γε: often left untranslated: γε emphasizes

λογισμὸς ὁ: calculation; account, reasoning, 3
μάθησις, ἡ: learning, 1
ὁρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
παις, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
πότερος, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5
ὐγεία, ἡ: health, 4
φευκτός, -ον: to be avoided or escaped, 2

ἐνός gen. sg. of εἰς
ἄτοπον (ἐστίν): (it is)...

30 φάναι: to call (κτ) (γ); pres. inf. φημί
δων: (actions) which...; relative, gen. obj. of
ὁργίζοσθαι
31 ἐπὶ τις...: at...; dat. pl. indefinite τίς
ολον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
32 τὰ μὲν ἀκούσας...: some involuntary acts
τὰ δὲ κατ(α) ἐπιθυμίας (ἀκούσας εἰναί)
ἡδέα: other involuntary acts...; ellipsis
κατ(α)...: in respect to...
33 τί διαφέρει: What difference are...?

τῷ...ἐναν: in respect to...; articular inf. (-
ing) and dat. of respect
τὰ...ἀμαρτηθέντα: acts...; aor. pass. pple
κατ(α)...: in respect to...
φευκτα (ἐστίν): dual neut. as subject
Moral Virtue is a Choice (III.2)  1111b

δοκεῖ δὲ οὖχ ἢττον ἄνθρωπικὰ εἶναι τὰ ἄλογα πάθη, ὡστε καὶ αἱ πράξεις τοῦ ἄνθρωπον <αἱ> ἀπὸ θυμοῦ καὶ ἐπιθυμίας. ἄτοπον δὴ τὸ τιθέναι ἀκούσια ταῦτα.

2. Διωρισμένον δὲ τοῦ τε ἐκούσιον καὶ τοῦ ἀκούσιον, περὶ προαιρέσεως ἐπεται διελθείν· οἰκείωτάτον γὰρ εἶναι δοκεῖ τῇ ἁρετῇ καὶ μᾶλλον τὰ ἡθο κρίνειν τῶν πράξεων. ἡ προαιρέσεις δὴ ἐκούσιον μὲν φαίνεται, οὐ ταῦτον δὲ, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πλέον τὸ ἐκούσιον τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἐκούσιον καὶ παῖδες καὶ τάλλα ζῶν κοινωνεῖ, προαιρέσεως δ' οὔ, καὶ τὰ ἐξαίφνης ἐκούσια μὲν λέγομεν, κατὰ προαιρέσεις δ' οὔ. οἱ δὲ λέγοντες αὐτὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἢ θυμὸν ἢ βούλησιν ἤ τινα δόξαν οὐκ ἐοίκασιν ὀρθῶς λέγειν. οὐ γὰρ κοινὸν ἡ προαιρέσεις καὶ τῶν

άκούσιος, -ου: unvoluntary; unwilling, 9
ἄ-λογος, -ου: irrational, unreasonable, 4
ἀνθρωπικός, -ης, -ων: human, of a human, 2
ἀ-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
βούλησις, -εως, η: wanting, want, 6
δι-ἐρχομαι: to go/pass through (in detail), 1
δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, 6
δόξα, η: opinion, 5
ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
ἐξαίφνης: suddenly, immediately, 2
ἐπισκευαῖ: to follow, accompany, escort, 3

1 ἢττον: comparative adv.
ἀνθρωπικά: i.e. part of human nature
τὰ ἄλογα πάθη: subject
ὡστε: so that...; result clause
2 αἱ πράξεις...: supply δοκεῖ ἄνθρωπικὰ εἶναι from above
ἀπὸ...: i.e. because of these things
3 ἄτοπον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
τὸ τιθέναι: to assign (x) (y); or ‘to make (x) (y)’ articular inf. + acc. obj. and acc. pred.
4 Διωρισμένον...ἐκούσιον: gen. abs. with pf. pass. pple
διελθείν: inf. subject; aor. inf. δι-ἐρχομαι
5 ἡ προαιρέσεις δοκεῖ: (choice) seems
6 τὰ ἡθο: acc. pl., ἡθο-α
κρίνειν: assume ἡ προαιρέσεις δοκεῖ from above
7 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential

ζῷον, τὸ: animal, 7
ἡθος, -εως, τὸ: character, 1
κοινός, -ης, -ων: common(place); public, 7
κοινωνεῖν: have a share of, partake in (gen) 2
κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ου: proper to, suitable to (dat), 1
ὄρθως: rightly, correctly, 4
παιδός, παϊδὸς, ὁ, η: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
τίθημι: to place, put, set, 3
ὡστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

τ(ὁ) αὐτὸν: attributive αὐτὸς means ‘same’
8 ἐπὶ πλέον (ἐστίν): (is) over more; i.e. has a greater range than choice
τοῦ ἐκούσιον: partitive gen. obj. of verb
καὶ...καὶ...: both...and...
9 τάλλα: τὰ ἀλλὰ
προαιρέσεως δ’ οὐ: add καὶ παίδες...
κοινωνεῖ from above
τὰ ἐξαίφνης: sudden acts; adv. in attributive position
10 λέγομεν: we call; governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.)
κατὰ: in respect to...
οἱ λέγοντες: those...; pple governing a double acc.
11 αὐτὴν: i.e. προαιρέσεις
12 κοινὸν...τῶν ἄλογων: a thing shared with irrational (beasts); i.e. not shared both by humans and animals; supply ἐστίν

51
ἐλόγον, ἐπιθυμία δὲ καὶ θυμός. καὶ ὁ ἀκρατὴς ἐπιθυμών μὲν πράττει, προαιρούμενος δ' οὖ· ὁ ἐγκρατής δ' ἀνεπιθυμών, προαιρούμενος μὲν, ἐπιθυμών δ' οὖ· καὶ προαιρέσει μὲν ἐπιθυμία ἐναντιοῦται, ἐπιθυμία δ' ἐπιθυμία οὖ· καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐπιθυμία ἡδεσι καὶ ἐπιλῦτον, ἡ προαιρέσεις δ' οὔτε λύπηροι οὖθ' ἡδεσι. θυμὸς δ' ἐτι ἡττον· ἡκαστὰ γὰρ τὰ διὰ θυμῶν κατὰ προαιρέσεων εἶναι δοκεῖ. ἄλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ βούλησις γε, καίσερ σύνεγγυς φανομένου προαιρέσεις μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἔστι τῶν ἄδυνάτων, καὶ εἰ τις φαίνη προαιρέσθαι, δοκοῦ ἂν ἡλίθιος εἶναι· βούλησις δ' ἐστὶ <καί> τῶν ἄδυνάτων, οἷον ἀθανασίας. καὶ ἡ μὲν βούλησις ἐστι καὶ περὶ τὰ μηδαμῶς δι' αὐτοῦ πραχθήντα ἂν, οἷον ὑποκριτήν τινα νικάν ἡ ἀθλητήν·

ά-δύνατος, -ov: incapable; impossible, 4
ά-θανασία, ἡ: immortality, 1
ἀ-λητής, -οῦ, ὁ: athlete, 2
ἀ-κρατής, -ές: without self-control, 1
ἀ-λογος, -ov: irrational, unreasonable, 4
ἀ-να-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6
ἐγνατίστης, -ές: with self-control, 1
ἐναντίομαι: to oppose, contradict (dat.) 2

13 ἐπιθυμία δὲ καὶ θυμός: but...; supply verb and predicate from previous clause
ὁ ἀκρατής: one without self-control
ἐπιθυμῶν: by..., because of...; causal pres. pple
14 προαιρούμενος: causal pres. pple
ὁ ἐγκρατής: one...
15 προαιρούμενος...ἐπιθυμῶν: see above
προαιρέσθαι: dat. of compound verb, προαιρέσθαι
16 ἐπιθυμία (ἐναντιοῦται): add verb
17 ἡδοσ καὶ ἐπιλύπου (ἐστίν): (is) of...; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to ‘(is a desire) for...’
οὔτε λυπηροὶ οὖθ' ἡδον (ἐστίν): (is) neither of...; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to ‘(is a choice) of...’
18 ἡττων: comparative adv. ἡττον
ἡκαστα: superlative adv.
τὰ διὰ θυμῶν: the (acts)...
19 κατά...: in accordance with...
ἄλλα μὴν...γε: then again (choice is) also

ἐπί-λυπος, -ov: painful, causing pain, 3
ἡκιστος, -ης, -ov: least; not at all, 1
ἡλίθιος, -ov: foolish, silly; idle, vain, 2
καὶ-περ: although, 2
μηδαμος: in no way, not at all, 1
μήν: truly, surely, 5
νικάω: to win; conquer, defeat, 2
σὺν-εγγυς: near, similar, 1
ὑπο-κριτής, ὁ: actor; pretender, hypocrite, 1

not a wish; ἄλλα μὴν introduce a new item in the list (S2786); οὐδὲ (ὁυ καί) is an adv. and γε emphasizes βούλησις
20 καίσερ...φανομενον: neut. pple modifies fem. sg. βούλησις καίσερ reveals that the pple is concessive in sense
21 τῶν ἄδυνάτων: of impossible things; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to ‘(is a choice) of...’
καὶ εἰ...φαίνη, δοκεῖν ἂν: and if...should, ...would; fut. less vivid (ei opt., ἂν + opt.)
3s pres. opt. φιλί δοκέω
προαιρεσθαι: add ἄτα ἄδυνάτα as obj.
22 τῶν ἄδυνατων: see line 21
ολον: for example; ‘in respect to which’
23 τὰ...πραχθήντα ἂν: things which would...; aor. pass. pple πράττων + ἂν
equiv. to a aor. potential opt. of a finite verb δι(α) (δ)αυτου: through oneself
ολον: for example; ‘in respect to which’
ὑποκριτήν...νικάω: that...; ind. disc. with pres. α-contract inf. νικάω
Moral Virtue is a Choice (III.2) 1111b

προαιρεῖται δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα οὐδέσ, ἀλλ’ ὁσα οἴεται γενέσθαι ἂν δὲ οὕτω. ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ μὲν βούλησις τοῦ τέλους ἐστὶ μᾶλλον, ἡ δὲ προαίρεσις τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος, οἶνον ἵγιανον κολάμβων, προαιρούμεθα δὲ δὲ ἂν ἵγιανον καὶ εὐδαιμονέων κολάμβων μὲν καὶ φομέν, προαιρούμεθα δὲ λέγειν οὐχ ἄρμοζειν ὀλως γὰρ ἐσκεν ἡ προαίρεσις περὶ τὰ ἔφ᾽ ἡμῖν εἶναι. οὐδὲ δὴ δόξα ἂν εἶν' ἡ μὲν γὰρ δόξα δοκεῖ πάντα εἶναι, καὶ οὐδὲν ἤττον περὶ τὰ ἄδιδα καὶ τὰ ἀδύνατα ἡ τὰ ἔφ᾽ ἡμῖν καὶ τῷ ψευδεί καὶ ἀληθεί διαιρεῖται, οὐ τῷ κακῷ καὶ ἀγαθῷ, ἡ προαίρεσις δὲ τούτοις μᾶλλον. ὀλως μὲν οὖν

ā-δύνατος, -ον: incapable; impossible, 4
ἀδιδος, -ον: eternal, 2
ἀληθής, -ες: true, 8
ἄρμοξο: be suitable, fitting, harmonize, 1
βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6
διαιρέω: to divide, distinguish, separate, 3

25 ὁσα...αὐτοῦ: as many things as...; the missing antecedent is obj. of προαιρεῖται οἴεται: (a person)...;
γενέσθαι ἂν: (that)...would; ind. disc. with aor. inf. + ἂν equiv. to aor. potential opt. of a finite verb; ὁσα is acc. subj.

26 δι(α)(τ)αυτοῦ: reflexive
tοῦ τέλους ἐστί: is of...; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to ‘is (a wish) for...’

27 τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος: of things toward the end; i.e. of the means; see note for l. 26
οἶνον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’

29 φαμέν (εὐδαιμονεῖν θυλέσθαι): 1p pres. φημί; i.e. we do it and talk about it as well προαιρούμεθα δὲ λέγειν οὐχ ἄρμοζει: it is not suitable to say (that) we choose (to be happy); impersonal construction

30 δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5
eὐδαιμονέω: to be happy, be well, 1
οἴματι (οἵματι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
ὑγιαίνω: to be healthy, sound, 2
ψευδός, -ες, τό: falsehood, 2

32 οὐδὲν ἤττον...ἐν:no less...than...; ἤττον is a comparative adv. and οὐδὲν is an adv. acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609)
tὰ ἔφ᾽ ἡμῖν: see line 30

33 τῷ ψευδεί καὶ ἀληθεί: by...; dat. means διαιρεῖται: is distinguished
tῷ κακῷ καὶ ἀγαθῷ: by...; dat. means δὲ: but

34 τούτῳ (διαιρεῖται): i.e. κακῷ καὶ ἀγαθῷ, dat. of means; supply verb
δόξη ταύτων ἵσως οὐδὲ λέγει οὐδείς. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τυί· τῷ γὰρ προαιρεῖσθαι τάγαθα ἢ τὰ κακὰ ποιοὶ τυνὲς ἐσμεν, τῷ δὲ δοξάζειν οὐ. καὶ προαιρούμεθα μὲν λαβεῖν ἢ φυγεῖν [ἡ] τῷ τῶν τοιοῦτων, δοξάζομεν δὲ τί ἐστιν ἢ τίνι συμφέρει ἢ πώς· λαβεῖν δὲ ἢ φυγεῖν οὐ πάνυ δοξάζομεν. καὶ ἢ μὲν προ- αἵρεσις ἐπανεῖται τῷ εἰναι οὐ δεὶ μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ ὀρθῷ, ἢ δὲ δόξα τῷ ὡς ἀληθῶς. καὶ προαιρούμεθα μὲν ἢ μάλιστα ἴσμεν ἁγαθὰ ὁντα, δοξάζομεν δὲ ἢ οὐ πάνυ ἴσμεν· δοκοῦσι δὲ οὐχ οὐκ αὐτοὶ προαιρεῖσθαι τὰ ἁριστά καὶ δοξάζειν, ἀλλ' ἐνιοῦ δοξάζειν μὲν ἰμενον, διὰ κακίαν δὲ αἵρεσιθα οὐχ ἢ δεὶ. εἰ δὲ προγίνεται δόξα τῆς προαιρέσεως ἢ παρακολου- θεῖ, οὐδὲν διαφέρει· οὐ τούτο γὰρ σκοποῦμεν, ἀλλ' εἰ ταύτων

ἀληθῶς: truly, truthfully, 1
ἀμείβων, -ον (-ονος): better, 2
ἀριστος, -ης, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5
δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 6
ὁρθός: rightly, correctly, 4

1 ὁλῶς δόξη: to opinion in general; the contrast that follows is between general and particular opinion
ταύτων: τὸ ἀυτό; ἀυτὸς in the attributive position means same/ same as + dat.
οὐδὲ λέγει οὐδείς: not anyone in fact says (that choice is)…; οὐδὲ is an adv. (οὐ καὶ). and οὐδὲ is positive after οὐδὲ
ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ τυί: but neither (does anyone say that choice is the same) as a particular opinion; dat. sg. indefinite τίς
τῷ προαιρεῖσθαι τι(ά) ἁγαθὰ ἢ τὰ κακὰ: by…, because of…; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause
2 ποιοι τυνές: i.e. our character, indefinite
ποιός and τις
ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί
τῷ δοξάζειν: articular inf. and dat. of cause
3 οὗ (ποιοι τυνές ἐσμεν): supply verb and pred.
λαβεῖν, φυγεῖν: aor. inf. λαμβάνω, φεύγω
4 δέ: but
τί ἐστιν: ind. question
τίνι συμφέρει: to whom it…; ind. question
πάντως: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6
παρ-ακολουθέω: follow along, accompany, 2
ποιός, -ά, -όν: of such sort, of such kind, 4
προ-γίγνομαι: come/be born before (gen), 1
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
συμ-φέρω: be useful, be expedient, 1

with dat. of interest
6 τῷ εἶναι: by…, because of…; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause
οὗ δεῖ (προαιρεῖσθαι): (that) which one ought to choose;
τῷ ὀρθῶς (προαιρεῖσθαι): same as above
7 τῷ ὡς ἀληθῶς (δοξάζειν): by…; same as above;
ὅς ἀληθῶς is equiv. to ἀληθῶς ἃ…ἐντα: what…; i.e. ‘(the things) which,’
8 ἴσμεν: 1p οἶδα
ἀ…ἡμεν: see above
9 οἱ αὐτοὶ: the same people
ἀριστα: very well; superlative adv. that modifies both infinitives
10 ἔνιοι (δοκοῦσι): add verb
ἀμείβων: comparative adv.
ἀ…: see above
11 δεῖ: one ought
12 οὖν εἴη: not at all; inner acc. (no difference)
eἰ: whether…; ind. question governed by
σκοποῦμεν
ταύτων: τὸ ἀυτό; ἀυτός in the attributive position means ‘same/ same as’ + dat.

54
έστι δόξη τιν. τί οὖν ἡ ποιῶν τί ἐστίν, ἐπειδὴ τῶν εἰρημένων οὐθέν; ἐκούσαν μὲν δὴ φαίνεται, τοῦ δ’ ἐκούσιον οὐ πᾶν προαιρέτων. ἀλλ’ ἀρά γε τὸ προβεβουλευμένον; ἡ γὰρ προαιρεσις μετὰ λόγου καὶ διανοίας. ὑποσημαίνειν δ’ ἐσκε καὶ τούνομα ὡς ὃν πρὸ ἐτέρων αἱρέτων.

3. Βουλεύονται δὲ πότερον περὶ πάντων, καὶ πάν του Βουλεύσαι τό ἐστιν, ἡ περὶ ἐνίων οὐκ ἐστὶ θυλή; λεκτέον δ’ ἕως Βουλεύσαι τό ὑπέρ οὗ θυλῆσαι’ ἢ τις ἡλίθιος ἢ μανικέμονος, ἀλλ’ ὑπέρ οὗ οὐ νοῦν ἔχων. περὶ δὴ τῶν ἀδίκων οὐδεὶς Βουλεύεται, οἷον περὶ τοῦ κόσμου ἢ τῆς διαμέτρου καὶ τῆς πλευρᾶς, ὁτι ἁσύμμετροι. ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν ἐν κινήσει, ἀεὶ δὲ κατὰ ταύτα γυνομένων, εἰτ’ εἰξ’ ἁνάγκης ὡτε καὶ

13 τε at all; indefinite τις, τι lends emphasis to interrogative ποῖος

15 ἀλλ’(α) ἀρά γε: but is it...?; γε, often left untranslated, lends emphasis and liveliness to προβεβουλευμένον: pf. pass. pple γέγονε (ἐρέω); i.e. whether ἡ προσέρεισις is ἐπιθυμία, βουλή, and δόξα.

14 οὐθέν: οὐδέν; nom. pred. ἐστίν

17 τοὺονομα: τ(δ) ὄνομα; i.e. προ-αἱρεσις ὡς...: on the grounds of...; or ‘since...’ ὡς

κινεῖον: to set in motion, move, 4

κόσμος, ὁ: order, world, 1

λεκτέον, -ον: to be called or said, 2

μανικέμονος: to mad, rage, be furious, 3

μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7

νοῦς, ὁ: sense; mind, attention, 4

πλευρά, ἡ: side, 1

πότερον, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5

προ-αἱρετός, -ή, -άντων: chosen, 6

προ-βουλέων: to deliberate beforehand, 1

πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4

ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5

ὑπο-σημαίνειν: to indicate, imply, 1

+ pple (ειμί) expresses alleged cause from a character’s (or imagined) point of view.

18 Βουλεύονται δὲ πότερον: Do (people) deliberate...; the verb is used proleptically and should logically come after πότερον.

19 λεκτέον δ’ ἕως Βουλεύσαι τό οὐχ ὑπέρ οὗ: “to be deliberated” perhaps must not be said on behalf of what...

21 ὁ νοῦν ἔχων: one...; i.e. a sensible person

22 τῶν ἀδίκων: eternal things

23 οὐδὲ περὶ...γυνομένων: nor about things being in motion always

24 κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ: uniformly; ‘in respect to the same things’
φύσει ή δια των αἰτιαν ἄλλην, οἶον τροπῶν καὶ ἀνατολῶν. οὖδὲ περὶ τῶν ἄλλωτε ἄλλως, οἶον αὐχμῶν καὶ ὦμ-βρων. οὖδὲ περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης, οἶον θησαυροῦ εὐρέσεως. ἄλλ' οὖδὲ περὶ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἀπάντων, οἶον πῶς ἄν Σκύθαι ἄριστα πολιτεύοντο οὖδεις Ἀλκεδαμονίων βουλεύεται. οὐ γὰρ γένοιτ' ἀν τοῦτων οὐθὲν δι' ἡμῶν. βουλεύομεθα δὲ περὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῖν καὶ πρακτῶν· ταῦτα δὲ καὶ ἐστὶ λοιπά. αἰτίαι γὰρ δοκοῦσόν ἐλαι φύσις καὶ ἀνάγκη καὶ τύχη, ἐτι δὲ νοὸς καὶ πᾶν τὸ δ' ἀνθρώπου. τῶν δ' ἀνθρώπων ἔκαστοι βουλεύονται περὶ τῶν δ' αὐτῶν πρακτῶν. καὶ περὶ μὲν τάς

αἰτία, ή: reason, cause, responsibility, 7
ἄλλο-οτε: at another time, at other times, 1
ἄλλος: otherwise, in another way, 5
ἀνα-τολή, ή: sunrise, rise; east, 1
ἀνάγκη, ή: necessity, force, compulsion, 3
ἀνθρώπων, -η, -ον: human, of a human, 2
ἐπάπας, ἐπάασα, ἐπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
ἀριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
αὐχμός, ο: draught, 1
ἐὑρεσις, -εως, ή: finding, discovery, 2
θησαυρός, ο: treasure, store, 1

25 φύσει: dat. of means, φύσις
οἶον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
tροπῶν: solstices; ‘turns,’ a technical meaning for an otherwise common noun
26 τῶν ἄλλωτε ἄλλως: things at different times in different ways; ‘at one time in one way…at another time in another way’ S1274
27 τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης: things...
εὐρέσεως: gen. sg., modified by θησαυροῦ
27 ἄλλος οὐδὲ: but…not; translate separately πῶς ἄν…πολιτεύοντο: how…would…; ind. question governed by βουλεύεται; with 3p pres. potential opt.
ἀριστα: superlative adv.

Λακεδαμόνιος, -τα, -σων: Lacedaemonian, 1
νοος, ο: sense; mind, attention, 4
δυμβος, ο: rainstorm, 1
πολιτεύω: govern, administer the state, 1
πρακτα, τα: things to be done; matters of moral actions, 4
Σκύθης, -ου ο: a Scythian, 1
τρόπος, ο: manner, way; turn, 5
τύχη, ή: chance, luck, fortune, 3

30 γένοιτ(ο) ἄν: would…; aor. potential opt.
γίγνομαι
οὐθέν: οὔδὲν
δι(α) ήμῶν: i.e. through our own actions
31 τῶν ἐφ' ήμῖν: things up to us; or ‘things under our power,’ common use of ἐπί + dat.
32 κατ: in fact, actually; adv.
33 νοος: intellect
πάν: everything
τὸ δι(α) ἀνθρώπου: in attributive position modifying πάν
34 δι(α) (θ)αυτῶν: reflexive; i.e. by their own agency
The Nature of Deliberation (III.3) 1112b

άκριβείς καὶ αὐτάρκεις τῶν ἐπιστημῶν οὐκ ἐστὶ βουλή, οἶον περὶ γραμμάτων (οὐ γὰρ διστάζομεν πῶς γραπτέον): ἀλλ' ὅσα γίνεται δι' ἦμών, μὴ ὀσάυτως δ' ἄει, περὶ τούτων βουλευόμεθα, οἶον περὶ τῶν κατ' ἰατρικὴν καὶ χρηματιστικὴν, καὶ περὶ κυβερνητικὴν μᾶλλον ἡ γυμναστικὴν, ὡσ ὢττον διηκρίβωται, καὶ ἐτί περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν ὁμοίως, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰς τέχνας ἡ τὰς ἐπιστήμας· μᾶλλον γὰρ περὶ ταύτας διστάζομεν. τὸ βουλεύομαι δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὡς ἔπι τὸ πολὺ, ἄδηλους δὲ πῶς ἀποβησθεῖται, καὶ ἐν οἷς ἀδιάριστου.

Συμβούλους δὲ παραλαμβάνομεν εἰς τὰ μεγάλα, ἀπιστοῦντες ἦμων αὐτοῖς ώς οὐκ ἰκανοὶ διαγνώσει. βουλευόμεθα δ' οὐ περὶ τῶν τελῶν ἀλλὰ περὶ τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη. οὕτε

1 ἀκριβεῖς καὶ αὐταρκεῖς: defined and independent
2 τῶν ἐπιστημῶν: branches of knowledge; ‘of knowledges’
3 γραμμάτων: i.e. orthography
4 δι(α) ήμῶν: i.e. through our own actions μὴ ὠσάυτως δ(ε) ἄει: and not...; in the same relative clause; general relative clauses govern μη instead of οὐ
5 κατ(α): in (respect to)
6 δικρίβομαι: 3s pf. pass.
7 τὰς ἐπιστήμας: branches of knowledge

Dia-κριβέω: to examine accurately, 1
diσταζόω: to doubt, hesitate, 2
ἐπιστήμη, ἦ: knowledge, understanding, 4
ἱστορική, ἦ: the art of medicine, 2
ἰκανός, -η, -ον: enough, sufficient; capable, 1
κυβερνητική, ἦ: navigation, art of steering, 2
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7
παρα-λαμβάνω: to receive alongside, 1
συμ-βουλος, ὦ: co-deliners, adviser, 1
χρηματιστική, ἦ: business, money-making, 1
ως-αὑτως: in the same manner, just so, 2

8 τὸ βουλεύομαι (ἐστίν): articular inf. (-ing); supply verb
ἐν τοῖς ὡς ἔπι τὸ πολύ: in matters (occurring) generally; ὡς ἔπι τὸ πολὺ is in the attributive position and means ‘for the most part’ or ‘in general’
9 ἀδηλος δὲ: but...; modifying τοῖς ἀποβησθείται: fut. dep. ἀποβαινω
τοῖς ἀδιάριστον: matters undetermined
10 εἰς: in regard to...
11 ἦμών αὐτοίς: reflexive, dat. obj. of pple ὡς...ἰκανοὶ (οὐκ): on the grounds of (being)...; or ‘since’ ὡς + pple (add εἰς) expresses alleged cause; ἰκανοὶ is dat. pred. with explantory (epexegetical) aor. inf. that qualifies the pred.
12 τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη: things toward the ends; i.e. the means
γὰρ ἰατρὸς βουλεύεται εἰ υγάσει, οὔτε ῥήτωρ εἰ πείσει, οὔτε πολιτικὸς εἰ εὐνομὰν ποιῆσει, οὔδὲ τῶν λοιπῶν οὐδεὶς περὶ τοῦ τέλους. ἀλλὰ θέμενοι τὸ τέλος τὸ πῶς καὶ διὰ τῶν ἐσται σκοποῦσι· καὶ διὰ πλειώνων μὲν φαινομένου γίνεται διὰ τῶν ῥάστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἐπισκοποῦσι, δὲ ἔνος δὲ ἐπιτελουμένου πῶς διά τοῦτον ἐσται κάκεινο διὰ τῶν, ἐως ἣν ἔλθωσι ἐπὶ τὸ πρῶτον αἴτιον, ὅ ἐν τῇ εὑρέσει ἔσχατον ἐστὶν. ὁ γὰρ βουλευόμενος ἐνοεί ζητεῖν καὶ ἀναλύει τὸν εἰρημένον τρόπον ὁσπερ διάγραμμα (φανεταὶ δὲ ἢ μὲν ζήτησις οὐ πάσα ἐναι βουλεύσιν, οἶον αἱ μαθηματικαί, ἢ δὲ βουλεύσις πάσα ζήτησις), καὶ τὸ ἔσχατον ἐν τῇ ἀναλύει πρῶτον ἐναι ἐν τῇ γενέσει. κἂν μὲν ἀδυνάτω ἐν—

α-δύνατος, -ον: incapable; impossible, 4
ὁ, -ος, -α, -αν: responsible, blameworthy, 9
ἀνα-λύω: to resolve, analyze, undo, 1
ἀνά-λυσις, -εως, ἡ: resolution, analysis, 1
βουλευος, -εως, ἡ: deliberation, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: beginning, generation, 3
dια-γραμμα, -ατος, τό: geometric figure, 1
eἰς, μι, ἕν: one, single, alone, 9
ἐκεῖνος, -ης, -ον: that, those, 8
ἐν-τυγχάνω: chance upon, encounter (dat.) 1
ἐπι-σκοπέω: consider in addition, examine, 2
ἐπι-τέλεω: to complete, finish, accomplish, 2
ἔσχατος, -ης, -ου: last, 2
εὐ-νομία, -ῆς, ἡ: good order, 1

13 εἰ υγάσει: whether; ... add obj. ‘someone’
εἰ πείσει...εἰ...ποιῆσει: see l. 13; fut. πείθω
14 οὐδὲ...οὐδεὶς: nor...anyone
τῶν λοιπῶν: i.e. professions; orators, etc.
15 τέλος: τέλε-ος, gen. sg.
θέμενοι τὸ τέλος: aer. mid. pple τίθημι
τὸ πῶς καὶ διὰ τῶν ῥάστα: how...; ‘the how and the...’ ind. questions with fut. εἰμι; interrogatives may take an article when the question is about a topic (here, τέλος) just discussed (S1186)
16 τὸ τέλος: through many (means)
17 διὰ τῶν...κάλλιστα (τὸ τέλος ἐσται): ind. question with two superlative advs.;
eὑρεσις, -εως, ἡ: finding, discovery, 2
ἐως: until, as long as, 2
ζήτησις: to seek, look for, investigate, 4
ζήτησις, -εως, ἡ: a seeking; inquiry, 2
ἰατρὸς, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3
κάλλιστος, -ης, -ον: most noble or beautiful, 4
μαθηματικός, -άς, -ον: fond of learning, 1
πείθω: to persuade; mid. obey, 2
πολιτικός, ὁ: statesman, politician, 1
ῥάστα: most easily, 2
ῥήτωρ, ὁ: orator, (public) speaker, 1
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5
ὑγιάζω: to make healthy, sound, 1

add subject and verb
τοῦ τέλους δὲ ἔνος δὲ ἐπιτελουμένου: but (if the end) ...; gen. abs. conditional; gen. εἰς
18 τῶς διὰ τοῦτον ἐσται (ἐπισκοποῦσι): ind. question, supply verb from above; the subject is τέλος and τοῦτοreffers to the means (δι᾽ ἔνος)
19 a(1) ἐκεῖνο διὰ τῶν (ἐσταί): and through what that (means) will come to be ἔως ἢν ἔλθωσιν: general temporal with ἄν + aor. subj. ἐρχομαι
20 τοῦ τρόπου: in...; adv. acc. pf. pple λέγω
23 δὲ: but
τὸ ἔσχατον (ἐοικε)...πρῶτον: the last step in... is the first step in...; plan, then execute
24 κ(α)ι(ν): ... and if...

ἀδυνάτωρ: an impossibility; dat. compound
τύχων, ἀφίστανται, οἶον εἰ χρημάτων δεὶ, ταῦτα δὲ μὴ οἶον τε πορισθήναι· εὰν δὲ δυνατὸν φαίνηται, ἐγχειροῦσιν πράττειν. δυνάτα δὲ ἃ δὲ ἡμῶν γένοιτ' ἂν· τὰ γὰρ διὰ τῶν φίλων δὲ ἡμῶν πως ἐστίν· ἡ γὰρ ἄρχη ἐν ἡμῖν. ζητεῖται δ᾿ ὀτὲ μὲν τὰ ὀργανα ὑπὲρ 8 δὴ ἡ χειρά αὐτῶν· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς λοιποῖς ὑπὲρ μὲν δὴ ὃτε δὲ πῶς ἡ διὰ τῶν. ἐσκε δὴ, καθάπερ ἐρήτατι, ἀνθρώπος ἐναι ἄρχη τῶν πράξεων· ἡ δὲ βουλὴ περὶ τῶν αὐτῶ πρακτῶν, αἰ δὲ πράξεις ἄλλων ἐνεκα. οὐ γὰρ ἂν εἴη βουλευτόν τοῦ τέλος ἄλλα τὰ πρὸς τὰ τέλη· οὐδὲ δὴ τὰ καθ ἐκαστά,

25 ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. mid.; add ‘the task’ as object
οἶον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
δεὶ: one lacks; personal + gen. of separation
26 οἶον τε (ἔστιν): it is not possible + inf.; ‘it is such sort to…’ οἶος τε εἴμαι is an idiom equiv. to ‘be able’ or ‘be possible’
27 δυνάτα (ἔστιν): possible things (are)...
28 δι(α) ἡμῶν: i.e. through our own actions
29 ζητεῖται: we investigate; ‘it is sought,’ 3s pass. but best translated in active voice
30 καί: also
οἶνον εἰ ἄρτος τοῦτο ἡ πέπεπται ὡς δὲι: αἰσθήσεως γὰρ ταῦτα. εἰ δὲ ἁπειρον ἡξει. βουλευτὸν δὲ καὶ προαιρετὸν τὸ αύτὸ, πλὴν ἀφωρισμένον ἢδη τὸ προαιρετὸν τὸ γὰρ ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς κριθὲν προαιρετὸν ἔστων. παύεται γὰρ έκαστος ζητῶν πώς πράξει, ὅταν εἰς αὐτὸν ἀναγάγῃ τὴν ἄρχην, καὶ αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ ἡγούμενον τὸ τοῦ γὰρ τὸ προαιρούμενον. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἀρχαίων πολιτειῶν, δὲ "Ομηρος ἐμμείτο· οἱ γὰρ βασιλεῖς ἄ προείλοντο ἀνήγγελλον τῷ δήμῳ. ὄντος δὲ τοῦ προαιρετοῦ βουλευτοῦ ὑπερτοῦ τῶν ἐφ’ ἢμῖν, καὶ ἡ προάρεσις ἀν ἐι ἐν ζωλευτικῇ ὀρεξὶς τῶν ἐφ’ ἢμῖν· ἐκ τοῦ βουλευτοῦσαθαί γὰρ κρίναντες ὀρεγόμεθα κατὰ τὴν βουλευσιν. ἡ μὲν ὅων

ἀποθήκης: perception, sensation, 7
ἀναγγέλλων: report, carry back (word), 1
ἀνάγγελον: to lead back, trace back, 2
ἀρτός: bread, loaf, 1
ἀρχαῖος, -ς: ancient, 1
ἐπιρροέων: anciently, 2
ἀπορίζω: to determine, mark off, 3
βασιλεύω, -έως ὡς: to define, determine, mark off, 3
βουλεύω, -έως, ἡ: deliberation, 3
βουλευτικῆς, -ης ὡς: deliberative, 1
βουλευτοῦ, ὃς: able to be deliberated, 6
βουλή, ἡ: deliberation, 4
δῆλος, -ήν, -ον: clear, evident, 9
δῆμος, ὁ: people, 1
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4

1 οἶνον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'
τοῦτο (ἐστίν): is this object...; subject
πέπεπται: fut. pass. πέπτω
ὡς...: as...; clause of comparison
αἰσθήσεως (ἐστίν): (objects of) perception
2 εἰ (ταύτα)...βουλεύονται...ἄξει: if (these particularly are...); fut. more vivid (εἰ fut., fut.); translate the fut. protasis as pres.
βουλευτοῦ: object of deliberation
3 προαιρετῶν: object of choice
3 τὸ αὐτὸ (ἐστίν): pred.; αὐτός in the attributive position means 'same'
ἀφωρισμένον (ἐστίν): i.e. is decided; pf. pass. ἄφροριζω
4 τὸ...κριθὲν: the thing...; neut. aor. pple

5 παῦεται: ceases from + pple
πράξει: fut. πράττω
δῆλον...ἀναγάγῃ: whenever...; general temporal clause with 3s aor. subj.
eἰς (ἐ)αὐτῶν: reflexive
6 ἄρχην: the origin (of action); i.e. lead from the τελός, through the means, to the ἄρχη
αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ ἡγούμενον: the leading (part) of himself; i.e. the intellect
7 τὸ προαιρούμενον: (the part) choosing
δῆλον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
9 ἄ...: 'that which' aor. προαρέσει
dὴν...τοῦ προαιρετοῦ: the chosen being worthy of deliberation, desired, in our power
12 κατά...: in accordance with...
The Object of a Wish is an Apparent Good (III.4)

1. τύπω τις εἰρήσθω, καὶ περὶ ποία ἐστὶ καὶ ὁ ὁ τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη.

4. Ἡ δὲ βουλήσις ὅτι μὲν τού τέλους ἐστὶν εἰρήσθαι, δοκεῖ δὲ τοῖς μὲν τάγαθοι εἶναι, τοῖς δὲ τοῦ φανομένου ἁγαθοῦ. συμβαίνει δὲ τοῖς μὲν [τὸ] βουλητῶν τάγαθὸν λέγουσι μὴ εἶναι βουλητῶν ὃ βουλεῖται ὁ μὴ ὀρθῶς αἱροῦμενος (εἰ γὰρ ἔσται βουλητῶν, καὶ ἁγαθὸν ἢ δ’, εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, κακὸν), τοῖς δ’ αὐτὸ τῷ φανομένῳ ἁγαθῶν βουλητῶν λέγουσι μὴ εἶναι φύσει βουλητῶν, ἀλλ’ ἐκάστῳ τὸ δοκοῦν ἀλλ’ δ’ ἀλλω φαίνεται, καὶ εἰ οὔτως ἔτυχε, τάναντια. εἰ δὲ δὴ ταῦτα μὴ ἀρέσκει, ἄρα φατέον ἀπλῶς μὲν καὶ κατ’ ἀλλήλ-θειαν βουλητῶν εἶναι τάγαθον, ἐκάστῳ δὲ τῷ φανομένῳ;

1 τύπω: in…; dat. of manner
εἰρήσθω: let…; 3s pf. pass. imperative
λέγω (ἐρέω) with three separate subjects
καὶ…καὶ…: and…and…
περὶ τοῖς ἔστιν: i.e. the objects of choice; ind. question
ὁτί (ἡ προαίρεσις ἔστιν):… and that…; ind. disc. + gen. as predicate
τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη: of things…; i.e. means
15 Ἡ βουλήσις ὅτι: that Wanting…; ind. disc. as subject; βουλήσις belongs in the clause
tοῦ τέλους: of the end; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to ‘is (a wanting) of…’
εἰρήσθαι: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
16 τοῖς μὲν…τοῖς δὲ…: to some…to others…;
17 συμβαίνει: subject is δ βουλεῖται…
18 δ…αἱροῦμενος: what…; ‘(that) which…’

The Object of a Wish is an Apparent Good (III.4)
25 τῷ σπουδαῖο: to... in apposition to the previous clause
τὸ κατ' ἄλληθειαν εἶναι: what it is in truth; articular inf.
τὸ τυχόν: what it happens (to be); i.e. good or bad; neut. sg. pres. pple, τυγχάνω + inf. (here, a missing εἶναι) means ’happens to...’
26 καὶ: also
ἐπὶ: in the case of...
τοῖς:... διακειμένοις: to those...; i.e to healthy people; dat. of reference; pres. pple
27 τὰ... ὄντα: those things...; neut. pple εἰσί: τοιαύτα is pred. of ὄντα
κατὰ: in... in respect to...
τοῖς δ’ ἐπινόσοις: but...; dat. of reference
28 (ὕγιεινά ἑστὶ) ἐτερα: ellipsis
30 ἐκαστα: individual things; or ‘particular things

κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
μέτρου, τὸ: measure, 1
ὄρα: to see, look, behold, 6
ὀρθὸς: rightly, correctly, 4
πικρός, -ά, -όν: bitter; harp, 1
πιειστός, -ή, -ον: most, very many, greatest, 4
σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9
σῶμα, -ατος, τὸ: the body, 7
ὑγεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy, wholesome, 2
φαύλος, -η, -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8

τ(δ) ἄλληθες: the truth; ‘the true’

καθ’ ἐκάστην γὰρ ἔξιν ἴδια: peculiar in respect to to each disposition; pred.
32 διαφέρει: excels
πλειστον: very much; adv. acc. (inner acc., ’makes the most difference’)
τῶ... ὄραν: by...; articular inf. (-ing)
α-contract verb

33 ὦσπερ... ὡς: as if...; nom. sg. pres. pple εἰσί; ὦσπερ is used to show that action in the main verb is being compared to an assumed case (S2087)
ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς: among the masses (of people)

34 (ἡ ἡδονή) οὗ οὖσα: although not being (good), (pleasure)...; pres. pple is concessive in sense; fem. sg. modifying the understood subject ἡδονή
ἀγαθόν φαίνεται. αἱροῦνται ὅν τὸ ἡδὺ ως ἀγαθόν, τὴν δὲ λύπην ὡς κακὸν φεύγουσιν.

5. ὡστε δὴ βουλητοῦ μὲν τοῦ τέλους, βουλευτῶν δὲ καὶ προαιρετῶν τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος, αἱ περὶ ταῦτα πράξεις κατὰ προαίρεσιν ἄν εἰεν καὶ ἐκούσιοι. αἱ δὲ τῶν ἀρετῶν ἐνέργειαν περὶ ταῦτα. ἐφ᾽ ἡμῶν δὴ καὶ ἡ ἀρετή, ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ ἡ κακία. ἐν οἷς γὰρ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν τὸ πράττειν, καὶ τὸ μὴ πράττειν, καὶ ἐν οἷς τὸ μὴ, καὶ τὸ ναὶ. ὡστε εἰ τὸ πράττειν καλὸν δὲν ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἐστὶ, καὶ τὸ μὴ πράττειν ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἐσται αἰσχρὸν δὲν, καὶ εἰ τὸ μὴ πράττειν καλὸν δὲν ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν, καὶ τὸ πράττειν αἰσχρὸν ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν τὰ καλὰ πράττειν καὶ τὰ αἰσχρὰ, ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ τὸ μὴ πράτ-
τεν, τοῦτο δ' ἢν τὸ ἄγαθος καὶ κακοὶς εἶναι, ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἁρα
τὸ ἐπεικέσι καὶ φαύλοις εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λέγειν ὡς οὐδεὶς ἐκὼν
πονηρῶς οὐδ᾽ ἀκών μακάριος έσοκε τὸ μὲν ψευδέοι τὸ δ᾽ ἄλη-
θεὶ: μακάριος μὲν γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἀκών, ἢ δὲ μοχθηρία ἐκοῦ-
σιον. ἢ τοῖς γε νῦν εἰρημένοις ἀμφισβητητέον, καὶ τὸν ἀνθρωπὸν οὐ φατέον ἀρχὴν εἶναι οὐδὲ γεννητήν τῶν πράξεων
ώστε καὶ τέκνων. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα φαίνεται καὶ μὴ ἐχομεν εἰς ἄλλας ἀρχὰς ἀναγαγεῖν παρὰ τᾶς ἐν ἡμῖν, ὅπως ταῖς in ἡμῖν, καὶ αὐτὰ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν καὶ κόουσι. τούτοις
d᾽ έσοκε μερτυρεῖσθαι καὶ ἵδια ψυ ἐκάστων καὶ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν
τῶν νομοθέτων καλῶσον γὰρ καὶ τιμωροῦνται τοὺς δρῶν-
τας μοχθηρά, ὅσοι μὴ βία ἢ δὲ ἄγνοιαι ἢ μὴ αὐτοῖ

13 τοῦτο δ᾽ ἢν: and this is really...; 3s impf. εἰμὶ of a truth just realized (S1902), which is often present in English (e.g. was and still is) and accompanied by ἀπο; τοῦτο refers to doing and not doing καὶ καὶ σικυρά
τὸ ἄγαθος καὶ κακοὶς εἶναι: being...; articulair inf. and pred.; ἄγαθος, κακοὶς are predicates attracted into the dative by ἡμῖν
ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἁρα (ἡ) τὸ...ἐναι: see note above ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν: in our power; ‘in us’
14 ὡς οὐδεὶς ἐκών (ἐστίν) πονηρῶς οὐδ᾽ ἀκών (ἐστίν) μακάριος: that...; ind. disc.
15 τὸ μὲν...τὸ δὲ: to (speak) on the one hand (and)...to (speak) on the other hand
ψευδέοι: ἀλθῆθε: in...; in...; dat. of respect
17 τοῖς...εἰρημένοις: the things...; dat. pf. pass. πρός λέγοιν καὶ obj. of verbal adj.
τοίς: in fact; here, an intensive of the dat.
Our Responsibility for Good and Bad Actions (III.5) 1113b

αἴτιοι, τοὺς δὲ τὰ καλὰ πράττοντας τιμῶσιν, ὡς τοὺς μὲν προτρέψοντες τοὺς δὲ κωλύσοντες. καίτοι οὐσα μὴ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῶν ἐστὶ μὴ ἐκούσια, οὔδεις προτρέπεται πράττειν, ὡς οὐδὲν πρὸ ἐργοῦ δι᾽ τὸ πεισθήναι μὴ θερμαίνεσθαι ἢ αλγεῖν ἢ πεινῆν ἢ ἄλλ᾽ ὑπον τῶν τοιούτων οὔθεν γὰρ ἦττον πεισόμεθα αὐτά. καὶ γὰρ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τῷ ἄγνοειν κολάζοντοι, ἐὰν αἴτιοι εἶναι δοκῇ τῆς ἄγνοίας, οἷον τοῖς μεθύουσι διπλὰ τὰ ἐπιτήμια· ἡ γὰρ ἀρχὴ ἐν αὐτῷ κύριος γὰρ τοῦ μὴ μεθυσθῆναι, τοῦτο δ᾽ αἴτιον τῆς ἄγνοιας. καὶ τοὺς ἄγνοιοῦτας τί τῶν ἐν τοῖς νόμοις, ἡ δὲ ἐπίστασθαι καὶ μὴ χαλεπά ἐστι,

25 τοὺς...πράττοντας: those...; pres. pple ὡς...προτρέχοντες...κωλύσοντες: so that they may...; 'so as going to do...' ὡς + fut. pple (here, nom.) expressing purpose: translate as finite verbs or infinitives τοὺς δὲ...τοὺς δὲ: some...others; i.e. the τοὺς πράττοντας just mentioned
26 δόσα...ἐκούσια: as many (actions) as...; relative clause; the missing antecedent is acc. obj. μὴ:...μὴ:...: neither...nor...; μὴ is used instead of οὐ in a general relative clause ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν: in our power, or 'in us'
27 προτρέπεται: pres. pass. + inf. ὡς...δὲν: on the grounds that it is...; or 'since it is...'' ὡς + pple (here, acc. abs. with neut. pple ejil) expresses alleged cause from another's point of view (i.e. oudeis); Greek employs an acc. rather than gen. abs. when the verb is impersonal. S2059, S2076 οὐδὲν πρὸ ἐργοῦ: not at all useful; 'not at all for the task,' adverbial acc. and predicate
28 τὸ πεισθήναι: articular aor. pass. inf. πείθω and logical subject of the acc. abs. μεθύσω: make drunk; mid. become drunk, 1 μεθύω: to be drunk with wine, 3 μή-τε: and not; neither...nor, 8 νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 2 ὀστιο-οῦν, ἡστιο-οῦν, ὁστί-οὐν: whosoever, 5 πείθω: to persuade; mid. obey, 2 πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 3 πρὸ: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4 πρὸ-τρέπω: urge on or forward, turn to, 2 τιμάω: to honor, value, esteem, 1 μὴ θερμαίνεσθαι...πεινῆν: complementary infs. governed by πεισθήναι; πεινήν (πεινά-ειν) is an α-contract inf.
29 οὐδὲν ἦττον: no less; 'less by nothing' adv. acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609) and comparative adv. πεισόμεθα: fut. mid. πάσχω
30 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact ἐπί(,...ἀγνοεῖν: for...; articular inf. (-ing) and intensive expressing motive (S1689.2c)
30 κολάζομαι: i.e. people in general ἐὰν...δοκῇ: if he seems...; a pres. general condition (ἐὰν + subj., fut.) δοκέω
31 τῆς ἄγνοιας: for...; objective gen. οἶνον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'
32 τοῖς μεθύουσι: for those...; dat. interest, διπλά (ἐστί): nom. pred. 32 ἡ ἀρχή (ἐστὶ): the origin (is)
33 τοῖς μεθύουσι: articular inf., aor. pass. κύριος (ἐστί): (he is)...; nom. pred. τοῦ...μεθυόντης: articular inf., aor. pass. τοῦ...ἀγνοοῦντας: 2nd example from l. 29 τῶν ἐν τοῖς νόμοις: of matters in the laws
κολάζουσιν, ὡμοίως ἰδίᾳ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀλλοις, ὡς ἐπὶ αὐτοῖς ἵνα τὸ μὴ ἄγνοεύῃ τοῦ γὰρ ἐπιμέληθηναι κύριοι. ἀλλὰ τού τοιούτου γενέσθαι αὐτοὶ αἵτιοι ξώντες ἀνεμένως, καὶ τοῦ ἄδικους ἢ ἄκολαστους εἶναι, οἳ μὲν κακουργοῦντες, οἳ δὲ ἐν πόσοι καὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις διάγونτες· αἱ γὰρ περὶ ἐκαστα ἑνεργεῖαι τοιοῦτος ποιοῦνσιν. τοῦτο δὲ δῆλον ἐκ τῶν μελετῶν πρὸς ἡμῖν ἀγνόιαν ἢ πρᾶξιν διατελοῦσι γὰρ ἑνεργοῦντες. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἄγνοεύν ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ ἑνεργεύν περὶ ἐκαστα αἱ ἔξεις γίνονται, κομιδὴ ἀναισθητοῦ. ἔτι δὲ ἀλογοῦν τὸν ἄδικοντα μὴ βούλεσθαι ἄδικον εἶναι ἢ τὸν ἄκολαστάνωντα ἄκολαστον. εἰ δὲ μὴ ἄγνοων τις πράτ

1 ἀλλοις: other instances, other cases ὡς…: as many as…; relative clause and neut. acc. obj. of ἄγνοεύν
2 ἐπὶ αὐτοῖς δυν.: on the grounds that it is…; or ‘since it is…’ ὡς + pple (here, acc. abs. with neut. pple εἰς!) expresses alleged cause from another’s point of view; Greek employs an acc. rather than gen. abs. when the verb is impersonal. S2059, S2076 ἐπὶ: in their power; ‘in them’
3 τοῦ ἐπιμεληθήναι: of…; articular aor. pass. dep. inf. κύριοι (εἰςίν): ζῷστε…: so as…; result clause with aor. pass. dep. inf.
4 τοῦ…γενόθηκαί: …for…; objective gen. αὐτοὶ (εἰςίν): they themselves…; intensive
5 τοὺ…εἶναι: for…; objective gen. modifying αἰτίοι
6 οἳ μὲν…οἳ δὲ: some…others…; in apposition to αὐτοὶ; ‘these…those’ the accented article "οἳ" indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)
7 δῆλον (ἐστίν): experience; perfect πᾶσχω
8 μελετῶντων: μελετάωντος; pres. pple τοῦ…: in regard to… ἡμῖν: fem. acc. sg. ὡς ἡμῖν
9 ἐκ τοῦ ἑνεργεύειν: articular inf. (-ing) κομιδὴ ἀναισθητοῦ (ἐστίν): (is) of a quite insensitive man; i.e. foolish; gen. of quality as predicate perfect πᾶσχω
10 ἀλογοῦν (ἐστίν): (it is)…; impersonal τὸν ἄδικοντα μὴ: that one…; ind. disc.
11 τοῦ ἄκολαστάνωντα (μὴ βούλεσθαι)
12 τοῦ ἄγνοεύν τις: someone not being ignorant
Our Responsibility for Good and Bad Actions (III.5) 1114a

τει ἐξ ὁν ἐσται ἄδικος, ἐκὼν ἄδικος ὁν ἐη, οὐ μὴν ἐὰν γέ
βούληται, ἄδικος ὁν παύσεται καὶ ἐσται δίκαιος. οὐδὲ γάρ
ὁ νοσῶν ὑγίας. καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχεν, ἐκὼν νοσεῖ, ἀκρατῶς
βιοτεῦω καὶ ἀπειθῶν τοῖς ἰατροῖς. τότε μὲν οὖν ἐξῆν ἀυτῷ
μὴ νοσεῖν, προεμένω δ᾽ οὐκέτι, ὥσπερ οὐδ᾽ ἄφεντι λίθον ἔτ᾽
αὐτὸν δυνατὸν ἀναλαβεῖν· ἀλλ᾽ ὑμως ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τὸ βαλεῖν
[καὶ ράωι]. ἡ γὰρ ἄρχῃ εἰς ἀυτῷ. οὐτὶ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἄδικῳ
καὶ τῷ ἀκολάστῳ ἐξ ἄρχῃς μὲν ἐξῆν τοιοῦτοι μὴ γενέσθαι,
διὸ ἐκώτες εἰσών· γενομένοι δ᾽ οὐκέτι ἐστὶ μὴ εἶναι. οὐ μά-
νον δ᾽ αἱ τῆς ψυχῆς κακίαι ἐκούσιοί εἰσών, ἀλλ᾽ ἐνίοις καὶ
αἱ τοῦ σώματος, οἷς καὶ ἐπιπτώμων· τοῖς μὲν γὰρ διὰ
φύσιν αἰσχροῖς οὐδεὶς ἐπιτιμᾷ, τοῖς δὲ δι᾽ ἀγνομασίαιν καὶ

ά-γυμνασία, ἥ: lack of exercise, 1
ά-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
ά-κρατώς: incontinent, without control, 1
ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to take up or back, 2
ἀ-πείθεω: not to believe, not to trust, 1
ἀ-φ-ήμι: to send/throw, let loose, 2
βάλλω: throw, cast, hit, put, 1
βιοτεῦω: to live, 1
δυνατός, -η, -ον: able, capable, possible, 5
ἐκών, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8
ἐξ-εστί: it is permitted, is allowed, 2
ἐπ-τιμάω: to blame, put a penalty on, 5
ἰατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3

λιθός, ὁ: stone, 3
μὴ: truly, surely, 5
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4
νοσεῖ: to be sick, be ill, 3
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 1
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
παύω: to stop, make cease; mid. cease, 2
προ-ήμι: to let go, give up; mid. neglect, 1
ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3
σώμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
τότε: then, at that time, 3
ὑγίης, ἑς: healthy, sound, wholesome, 1
ψυχή, ἥ: soul, spirit; breath, life, 4

ἀυτῶς: for...; dat. of interest, the sick man
προεμένω δ᾽: but for him...; aor. mid. pple
προίμα: modifying ἀυτῶς
οὐκέτι (ἐξ-εστί): (it is) no longer (possible)
οὐδὲ: not even
ἄφεντι λίθον: for one...; aor. pple ἀφίμη
αὐτῶν: it, the stone
δυνατὸν (ἐστί): (it is)...; impersonal
ἐπ(1) ἀυτῶ (ἐστί): is in his power
ἡ ἄρχῃ (ἐστί): the origin
τῷ ἄδικῳ...: for...; dat. of interest
ἐξῆν: impf. ἐ-εστί; i.e. in one’s power
τοῖς οἰσχροῖς: those ugly; dat. compound

13 ἐξ ὁν...: (actions) from which...; relative clause; the antecedent is obj. of πράττει
ἐσται: fut. εἰμί
ἀν εἶν: would...; potential opt. πάσχω
οὐ μὴν: nor again; introduces a new point
ἐὰν γε...βούληται, παύσεται: fut. more vivid condition (ἐὰν + subj., fut.); γε emphasizes the entire protasis
14 παύσεται: + complementary pple εἰμί
ἐσται: fut. εἰμί
οὐδὲ γὰρ: for neither
15 ὁ νοσῶν (ἐὰν βούληται, ἐσται) ὑγίας: parallel to ll. 13-14
καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχεν: even if it...; concessive clause; i.e. even if he wants to be well
16 βιοτεῦω καὶ ἀπειθῶν: by...; causal pple
τότε μὲν: i.e. early on
ἐξῆν: impf. ἐ-εστί; i.e. in one’s power
άμέλειαν. ὠνομάζεται δὲ καὶ περὶ ἀσθένειαν καὶ πῆρωσιν: οὔθεις γὰρ ἐν ὀνείδισει τυφλῶ φύσει ἢ ἐκ νόσου ἢ ἐκ πληγῆς, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐλεήσαι· τῷ δὲ ἐξ οἴνοφλυγίας ἢ ἄλλης ἀκολούθησαν πᾶς ἣν ἐπιτιθήσαι. τῶν δὴ περὶ τὸ σῶμα κακίων αἱ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἐπιτιθόμεναι, αἱ δὲ μὴ ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν οὐ. εἰ δ' οὖντω, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων αἱ ἐπιτιθόμεναι τῶν κακίων ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν ἄν εἶναι. εἰ δὲ τὰς λέγου τί πάντες ἐφίλεσαν τοῦ φανομένου ἁγαθοῦ, τῆς δὲ φαντασίας οὐ κύριοι, ἀλλ' ὀποῖος ὀνείδισε: to reproach, rebuke (dat.) 1

πῆρωσις, -ες, ἢ: disabling; mutilation, 2

πληγή, ἢ: blow, strike, 1

κύριοι εἰσίν (ἢ). The following is a speech from an imagined objector. 3p pres. potential opt. εἰμι (ἐπιτιθόμεναι): those...; pass. pple ἐφίλεσαν: 3p pres. mid. ἐφ′ ἡμῖν + gen. (κακία): those...; preposition phrase in the attributive position ἐφ′ ἡμῖν: in our power; 'up to us'

κύριοι (ἐστιν): (they are)... ὀποίος πο(τε)...: what in the world...; i.e. character; a relative clause; the antecedent is the correlative and demonstrative τοιοῦτο:ποτε, ‘in the world,’ often used with interrogatives and relatives to express surprise or emphasis.
Our Responsibility for Good and Bad Actions (III.5) 1114b

Imagined objector’s speech until l. 12.
1 toioùto kai: this way also; pred., autò: to...; dat. of reference (viewpoint)
2 ἐαυτῷ τῆς ἐξεώς: dat. of interest and objective gen. with ἄτιος
καὶ τῆς φαντασίας: also for...; obj. gen.
3 ἔσται: fut. εἰμί
αὐτὸς: intensive pronoun
οὐδεὶς (ἐστίν): οὐδεὶς ἐστίν
(ἐ)αυτῷ: for...; dat. of interest
τού κακοποιεῖν: for...; articular inf. (-ing) and objective gen.
δία τούτων: i.e. bad deeds; same as ταύτα
5 (ἐ)αυτῷ...ἐσεσθαι: that he will have...; ‘will be for him’ dat. possession + fut. εἰμί
6 δὲ: but
αὐθαίρετος (ἐστίν)
φύναι: to be born (with the end); aor. inf.
ἐσπερ: as it were, so to speak
καλὸς: well, nobly, 4
κρῖνα: to decide, judge, 6
μαθάνα: to learn, understand, 3
μέγιστος, -ης, -ου: very large, greatest, most important, 4
μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
οἰσμαί (οἴμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
ὄψις, -ως, ἡ: vision; appearance; face, 3
παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 2
τέλειος, -α, -ου: perfect; completed, 1
φαντασία, ἡ: appearance; imagination, 2
7 ὄψιν: i.e. moral vision or insight
ἵ: by which...; relative and dat. of means
κατά: in (respect to); ‘in accordance with’
8 φί...: the one to whom...; dat. of interest; the missing antecedent is subject of ἐστίν
περικεφαλαία: is disposed by nature + inf.; ‘has grown by nature,’ pf. φυσάω is often translated as ‘is by nature’ or ‘is naturally’
9 τὸ γὰρ...περικεφαλαία: single pred. of ἄν εἶνα τι καὶ δὲ...ἐξεί: and (that) which...; 3s fut. ἐξεί ὁλον το (ἐστίν): it is possible + inf.; ‘it is such sort to...’ ὁλος το εἰμί is an idiom equiv. to ‘be able’ or ‘be possible’
10 λαβέναι, μαθεῖν: aor. λαμβάνω, μανθάνω
οἶνον ἐρε: which sort was by nature (to him)
τὸ εὖ...περικεφαλαία: this being disposed well and nobly by nature; art. inf. in apposition
12 ἄν εἶν: would...; potential opt.
εἰ δέ...: The objector’s speech has ended
ἀρετή τής κακίας ἦσται ἐκούσιον; ἀμφότερον γὰρ ὁμοίως, τῷ ἀγαθῷ καὶ τῷ κακῷ, τὸ τέλος φύσει ἢ ὀπωσδήποτε φαίνεται καὶ κεῖται, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πρὸς τούτο ἀναφέροντες πράττουσιν ὀπωσδήποτε. εἴτε δὴ τὸ τέλος μὴ φύσει ἐκάστῳ φαίνεται ὀιοντοῦσι, ἀλλὰ τί καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἦστιν, εἴτε τὸ μὲν τέλος φυσικὸν, τῷ δὲ τὰ λοιπὰ πράττειν ἐκούσιως τὸν σπουδαίον ἐλλάδα ἐκούσιον ἦστιν, οὐθὲν ἤττων καὶ ἡ κακία ἐκούσιον ἐλλάδι· ἐκούσιοι εἰσιν αἱ ἀρεταί (καὶ γὰρ τῶν ἔξεστιν συναίτιοι πολὺ αὐτοὶ ἔσμεν, καὶ τῷ ποιῶν τινες εἶναι τὸ τέλος τοῦνδε πλὴν ἑπεμβαίνοντο), καὶ αἱ κακίαι ἐκούσιαι ἂν εἶνεν.

13 τῷ μᾶλλον ἢ ἀρετῆ...: Why will virtue be more voluntary...?; common translation of τί (‘in respect to what?’)

τῆς κακίας: than...; gen. of respect

ἀμφότερος: to both (men)...; dual dat.

ὅμοιος: in the same way

τῷ ἀγαθῷ καὶ τῷ κακῷ: in apposition to ἀμφότερος

14 φύσει ἢ ὀπωσδήποτε: in apposition to ὀμοίως

15 ταῖς λοιπὰς...ἀναφέροντες: (they)...; pres. pple and acc. obj.; pple modifies the 3p subject of πράττουσιν

τὰ λοιπὰ: the rest of the actions

πρὸς τούτο: i.e. to the τέλος

16 εἴτε...εἴτε...: whether...or...

δὴ: therefore, then; inferential

τι καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἦστιν: something in fact is depending of him; or ‘on account of him’ for παρὰ + acc. marking dependence see S1692.3c

18 φυσικόν (ἐστίν)

τῷ πράττειν...σπουδαῖον: because of...; ποιῶς, -άς, -ῶν: of such sort, of such kind, 4

σπουδαῖος, -ας, -ων: good, earnest; 9

συν-ἀττίος, -ον-: contributing causes of (gen), 1

τίθημι: to place, put, set, 3

τοῖς δέ, -άδε, -ώνδε: this here sort, such, 3

ὑπ-άρχει: to exist, is possible, 4

φυσικός, -ης, -ῶν: produced by nature, natural, 6

dat. of cause, articular inf (-ing); τῶν σπουδαίων is acc. subject

19 ἐκούσιοι: a voluntary thing; nom. pred.

οὐθέν ἤττων: no less; ‘less by nothing’ adv. acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609) and comparative adv.

καί: also

20 ἐκούσιοι: see above

ἀν εἴη: potential opt. ἐμιτ

τῷ κακῷ: for...; dat. of interest

21 τὸ διὰ ταῦτα: (acting) by his own (agency); ‘on account of him,’ διὰ + acc. can express cause or agency; the article may refer to an articular inf. or more likely is used to refer to the phrase: the phrase ‘by his own agency’

καί εἶ: even if...

22 καὶ γὰρ...καί: for both...and...

23 αὐτοὶ: we ourselves; intensive τῷ...ἐνα: by..., because of...; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause

ποιῶς τινες: a certain sort; pred.

24 τιθέμεθα: we make (x) (y); double acc.
ομοίως γάρ.

Κοινῆ μὲν οὖν περὶ τῶν ἀρετῶν ἐρήται ἡμῖν τὸ τε γένος τύπω, ὅτι μεσότητις εἰσώ καὶ ὅτι ἐξεῖς, ὦφ᾽ ὦν τε γίνονται, ὅτι τούτων πρακτικαὶ <καὶ> καθ᾽ αὐτάς, καὶ ὅτι ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκούσιοι, καὶ οὕτως ὃς ἄν ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος προστάξῃ. οὐχ ὁμοίως δὲ αἱ πράξεις ἐκούσιοι εἰσὶ καὶ αἱ ἐξεῖς. τῶν μὲν γὰρ πράξεων ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς μέχρι τοῦ τέλους κύριοι ἐσμέν, εἰδότες τὰ καθ᾽ ἐκαστά, τῶν ἐξεῶν δὲ τῆς

γένος, -εος, τό: kind, type, 2
κοινός, -ης,-ον: common(place); public, 7
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2
ὁρθός, -η, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6

26 Κοινή: in common; dat. of manner
ἐρήται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω); pf. pass. governs a dat. of agent
τὸ τε γένος: both their genus

27 τύπω: in...; dat. of manner
ὅτι μεσότητις εἰσίν: namely that...; in apposition to τὸ γένος
ὅτι ἐξεις (ἐις): see above
ὑφ᾽ ὄν...γίνονται: by which (actions)...; relative clause with ὑπὸ + gen. expressing agency; the following τούτων is antecedent
ὅτι τούτων πρακτικαὶ (εἰς): namely that (virtues are) able to produce these (actions)...; perfect πᾶσχω

28 κατὰ (τὰ) (ἐ)αυτάς: in according with...; or ‘corresponding to...’

πρακτικός, -ης,-ον: able to effect (gen.) 2
προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5
τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5

ὅτι (εἰς): 29 ἐφ᾽ ἡμῖν: in our power; ‘up to us’
ὁς ἄν...προστάξῃ: as...perscribes; a conditional clause of comparison with ἄν + subj. (3s aor. subj.); equiv. to a general condition
τῶν μὲν...πράξεων: of actions...; parallel to τῶν ἐξεων δὲ below

30 ἐσμέν: 1p εἰμί
εἰδότες: pple οἶδα
τὰ καθ᾽ ἐκαστα: the particulars, the details; ‘those each by each;’ i.e. between ἀρχῆ and τέλος
τῶν ἐξεων δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς (κύριοι ἐσμέν): and of the dispositions...; ellipsis, parallel to above
άρχής, καθ’ ἐκαστα δὴ ἡ πρόσθεσι σοι γνώριμος, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀρρωστιῶν· ἀλλ’ ὅτι ἐφ’ ἣμῖν ἢ ὡς οὕτως ἢ μὴ οὕτως χρήσασθαι, διὰ τοῦτο ἐκούσιον.

Ἀναλαβόντες δὲ περὶ ἐκάστης εἰσομεν τίνες εἰσὶ καὶ περὶ ποῖα καὶ πῶς· ἀμα δ’ ἔσται δήλον καὶ πόσαι εἰσίν. καὶ πρῶτον περὶ ἀνδρείας. 6. ὅτι μὲν οὖν μεσότης ἐστὶ περὶ φόβους καὶ θάρρους, ἥδη φανερὸν γεγένηται· ϕοβούμεθα δὲ δήλον ὅτι τὰ φοβερά, ταῦτα δ’ ἐστίν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν κακά· διὸ καὶ τὸν φόβον ὀρίζονται προσδοκίαν κακοῦ. φοβούμεθα μὲν οὖν πάντα τὰ κακὰ, ὅλον ἀδοξίαν πενίαν νόσον ἀφιλίαν θάνατον, ὅλ’ οὖ περὶ πάντα δοκεῖ ὁ ἀν- δρείας εἶναι· ἐνα γὰρ καὶ δεῖ φοβεῖσθαι καὶ καλὸν, τὸ

1 καθ’ ἐκαστα: individual, one by one; ‘each by each’ modifying ἡ πρόσθεσις
2 ἐπὶ... in the case of...
3 ὅτι: because...
4 ἐφ’ ἡμῖν: in our power; ‘up to us’
5 ὅτι: it really is...; i.e. it was and still is...; 3s impf. ἐφ’ ἡμῖν of a truth just realized (S1902), which is often present in English
6 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
7 ἕτοι: that...; subject
8 δήλον ὅτι: translate this frequent construction either (1) ‘(it is) clear that’ and place main verb in clause or (2) ‘clearly’ ὅτι...ἐπιτίθειν: so to speak...; inf. absolute (S2012)
9 προσδοκία: as...; acc. pred.
10 οἴοι: for example; ‘in respect to which’
11 περὶ πάντα...ἐνα: to be concerning all (these) things
12 καὶ δεῖ...καὶ καλὸν (ἐστιν): both...and (it is)...; both impersonal constructions govern the inf.; ἐνα is acc. obj.
ἀ-δοξία, ἥ: disgrace, 2
ἀ-φοβοσ, -ου: fearless, without fear, 3
αἰθήμων (-ονος), -ον: modest, 3
ἀν-αἰσχυντος, -ου: shameless, 2
ἀτο-βολή, ἥ: loss, throwing away, 1
γυνή, γυναικός ἥ: woman, wife, 1
ἴλιθερίος, -α, -ου: generous, liberal, 4
ἴμπηκχς, -ές: fair, equitable, good, suitable, 2
ἴυθαιρῶς: quite boldly, quite confidently, 1
μεταγγύῳ: to whip, flog, 1
μέλλων: be likely, intend, be about to (inf.), 2
μετα-φορά, ἥ: metaphor, transference, 1
μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
ὀμοίως, -α, -ου: like, similar, resembling, 7
ὀμοιοτήτις, -τητος, ἥ: similarity, resemblance, 4
παιδός, παιδός, ὁ, ἥ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
πενία, ἥ: poverty, need, 3
πολεμικός, -ή, -ον: of war, warlike, 2
φόβος, ὁ: assault, violence, 1
φόβων, ὁ: envy, 4
χρῆμα, -αιτος, τό: money; property, 5

13 τὸ δὲ μὴ (φοβεῖθαι) αἰσχροῦ (ἐστίν): and...
οὖν: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
ὅ φοβοῦμενος: one...; add τὴν ἀδοξίαν
as object
14 ὁ μὴ φοβοῦμενος: add τὴν ἀδοξίαν
λέγεται: (a man fearing disgrace)...; supply a subject
15 ὑπὸ...: by...; gen. expressing agency
κατὰ μεταφόραν: by analogy; ‘in accordance with transference’
ἐξα: (a man fearing disgrace)...;
16 τὸ ἀνδρείον: dat. of special adj.
καί: in fact, actually
ὁ ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): subject
17 οὐδέ: nor; both instances of οὐδὲ are separation conjunctions
οὐσα... (ἐστίν): i.e. as many as are not caused by...
18 δὶ’ αὐτῶν: on account of himself
οὐδὲ (ἐν): not even
19 ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): pred.
λέγομεν δὲ καὶ τούτον καθ’ ὁμοιοτητά: but we call (him) this too by way of
similarity ; i.e. call ἄφοβον ἀνδρείον;
‘in respect to similarity’
20 δειλὰ ὁτὲς: (although)...; concessive use of pres. pple εἰμί
21 πρὸς...: in regard to...
ἐνθάρρωσ ἔχοισιν: ἔχω ('be disposed' or
‘holds’) + adv. is often translated as εἰμί +
pred.
22 οὐδὲ δὴ: nor indeed; δὴ is intensive
γυναῖκα: (his) wife
23 οὐδὲ (ἐν): nor...
24 μέλλουν: (someone) about to...; subject
ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν)
ο ἄνδρεῖος; ἥ περὶ τὰ μέγιστα; οὐδεὶς γὰρ ὑπομενετικώτερος τῶν δεινῶν. φοβερῶτατον δ' ὁ θάνατος· πέρας γὰρ, καὶ οὐδὲν ἐτι τῷ τεθνεώτι δοκεῖ οὐτ' ἀγαθὸν οὔτε κακὸν εἶναι. δόξει δ' ἄν οὐδὲ περὶ θάνατον τὸν ἐν παντὶ ὁ ἄνδρεῖος εἶναι, οἶνον ἐν θαλάττῃ ἦ νόσοις. ἐν τίσον οὖν; ἦ ἐν τοῖς καλλίστοις; τοιούτοι δὲ οἰ ἐν πολέμῳ ἐν μεγίστῳ γὰρ καὶ καλλίστῳ καυδύνῳ. ὁμόλογοι δὲ τούτοις εἰδί καὶ αἱ τι- μαί αἱ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι καὶ παρὰ τοῖς μονάρχοις. κυρίως δὴ λέγοιτ' ἄν ἄνδρεῖος ὁ περὶ τὸν καλὸν θάνατον ἀδείς, καὶ ὁσα θάνατον ἐπιφέρει ὑπόγυνα ὄντα· τοιαῦτα δὲ μά- λιστα τὰ κατὰ πόλεμον. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν θαλάττῃ

α-δεής, -ές: fearless, 2
deινός, -η,-όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
ἐπι-φέρω: to bring, bring on, impose, 1
θάλαττα, ἦ: the sea, 2
θυέσκω: to die, 11
κάλλιστος, -η,-όν: most noble or beautiful, 4
κυρίως: legitimately, authoritatively, 1
μέγιστος, -η,-όν: very large, greatest, most important, 4
μήν: truly, surely, 5
μον-άρχος, ὁ: monarch, sole ruler, 1

25 ὁ ἄνδρεῖος (ἐστίν)
oὐδεὶς (ἐστίν)
26 τῶν δεινῶν: objective gen. modifying the comparative adj.
φοβερῶτατον: neut. pred.: supply ‘thing’
πέρας (ἐστίν): (it is)...
27 οὐδὲν ἐτι: no longer anything...; ‘not anything’
τῷ τεθνεώτι: to...; dat. of reference, pf.
act. pple θυέσκω; the pf. indicates a state
(‘being dead’) rather than activity (‘having died’)
28 δόξει δ' ἄν: would...; aor. potential opt.
oὐδέ: not even
τὸν ἐν παντὶ: in every (circumstance);
modifying θάνατον in the attributive

νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
ὁμό-λογος, -ον: agreeing, corresponding (dat.), 1
παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
πέρας, τό: limit, end, boundary, 1
πόλεμος, ὁ: war, 4
πόλις, -ες ἦ: a city-state, city, 2
tιμή, ἦ: honor; state offices, 8
ὑπό-γυνος, -ον: sudden, imminent, at hand, 1
ὑπομενετικός, -η,-όν: abiding, enduring, 1

position
29 οἶνον: for example; ‘in respect to which’
ἐν τίσιν οὖν: in what instances (of death) then (is one courageous)?; dat. pl. τίς
30 τοιοῦτοι (eiav)
32 αἱ ἐν...μονάρχοις: prepositional phrases in
attributive position modifying τιμαί
παρὰ: alongside...
δὴ: quite; intensive modifying to the adverb
33 λέγοιτ(α) ἐν: would...; potential pres. opt.
ὁσα...: as many (emergencies) as...; neut.
pl. subject
34 ὑπόγυνα δύνα: pple εἰμι modifying ὁσα
35 κατὰ: in...; ‘in respect to’
oὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ: nevertheless; (S2767)
καὶ ἐν νόσους ἀδεης ὁ ἀνδρείος, οὐχ οὖτος δὲ ὡς οἱ θαλάττων: οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπεγνώκασι τὴν σωτηρίαν καὶ τὸν χάνα- 
τον τὸν τοιοῦτον δυσχεραίνουσι, οἱ δὲ εὐελπίδες εἰσὶ παρὰ 
τὴν ἐμπειρίαν. ἀμα δὲ καὶ ἀνδρίζοντα ἐν οἷς ἐστὶν ἄλκη 
ἡ καλὼν τὸ ἀποθανεῖν ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις δὲ φθοραῖς οὐδέ-
τερον ὑπάρχει.

7. Τὸ δὲ φοβερῦν οὐ πᾶσι μὲν τὸ αὐτὸ, λέγομεν δὲ τι 
καὶ ὑπὲρ ἀνθρωπον. τότῳ μὲν οὖν παντὶ φοβερὸν τῷ γε 
νοῦν ἔχοντι τὰ δὲ κατ᾽ ἀνθρωπον διαφέρει μεγέθει καὶ τῷ 
μᾶλλον καὶ ἢττον’ ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ θαρραλεὰ. δὲ ἀν 
δρείος ἀνέκπληκτος ὡς ἀνθρωπος. φοβήσεται μὲν οὖν καὶ 
tὰ τοιαῦτα, ὡς δὲ καὶ ὡς ὁ λόγος ὑπομενεῖ τοῦ καλοῦ

'à-deis, -é÷: fearless, 2
άλκι, ἥ: strength, prowess (to avert danger) 1
ἄμια: at the same time; along with (dat.), 2
ἀν-ἐκπληκτος, -ov: intrepid, undaunted, 1
ἀνδρίζομαι: to play the man; become a man, 1
ἀπο-γιγνώσκον: despair, give up hope of, 1
ἀπο-νήσκω: to die, die off, perish, 4
δυσ-χεραίνω: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3
ἐμπειρία, ἥ: experience, 4
ἐς-ελπις, -δος, ὁ, ἥ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5
θαλάττιος, ὁ: seaman (sailor), 1

1 ἀδεης (ἔστι): pred.
ὡς: as…; clause of comparison; as often, the verb is missing through ellipsis
οἰ μὲν…οἱ δὲ: these…those…; i.e. the 
the courageous vs. the seamen; the accented 
article oi indicates that the article is used as 
a demonstrative (S1107)

2 ἀπεγνώκασι: 3p pf.; the pf. denotes a state 
rather than activity: ‘are in despair over’

3 παρά: in consequence of…; ‘because of…’

4 ἀνδρίζοντα: they play the man; i.e. people 
are courageous
ἐν οἷς: in which circumstances…; relative

5 καλὸν (ἔστιν): pred.
τὸ ἀποθανεῖν: aor. articular inf. (-ing)

7 πᾶσι: to…; dat. pl. of reference (viewpoint)
τὸ αὐτὸ (ἔστιν): pred., σὺ/τός in the 
attributive position means ‘same’
τί…ὑπὲρ ἀνθρωπον: something beyond 
human (endurance); ‘exceeding the human’

θαρραλεός, -ov: confident, bold, 6
μέγεθος, -ος, τὸ: size, magnitude, height, 1
νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5

8 τοῦτο (ἔστι)
τὸ…ἔχοντι: pple modifies παντὶ; νοῦν 
ἔχειν is a common idiom for ‘have sense’

γε: at least; restrictive

9 τὰ κατ(ά) ἀνθρωπον: things not beyond 
human endurance; ‘in accordance to a 
human’ in contrast to τὶ ὑπὲρ ἀνθρωπον

μεγέθει: in…; dat. of respect

τὸ μᾶλλον καὶ ἢττον: in respect to the 
more and less; i.e. in degree; dat. of respect

10 τὰ θαρραλεὰ: acts inspiring confidence

11 ἀνέκπληκτος (ἔστι) ὡς ἀνθρωπος: is as 
...as a man (can be); ὡς introduces a clause 
of comparison with verb missing via ellipsis

καὶ: even

12 ὡς…: as he ought and as reason 
(requires); two clauses of comparison

ὑπομενεῖ: he will endure; ὑπομενεῖ-ει, fut.
τοῦ καλοῦ: of what is noble; ‘the noble’
ἐνεκα: toῦτο γάρ τέλος τῆς ἄρετῆς. ἐστὶ δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ ἦττον ταῦτα φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ ἐτὶ τὰ μὴ φοβερὰ όσ τοιαῦτα φοβεῖσθαι. γίνεται δὲ τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν ἢ μὲν ὅτι ὃς ἐδὲ, ἢ δὲ ὅτι οὐχ ὡς ἐδεῖ, ἢ δὲ ὅτι οὐχ ὅτε, ἢ τί τῶν τοιούτων· ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰ θαρραλέα. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἐδὲ καὶ οὐ ἐνεκα ὑπομένων καὶ φοβοῦμενος, καὶ ὡς ἐδεὶ καὶ ὅτε, ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ θαρρῶν, ἀνδρείος· κατ᾽ ἄξιαν γάρ, καὶ ὡς ἐν ὁ λόγος, πάσχει καὶ πράττει ὁ ἀνδρείος. τέλος δὲ πάσης ἐνεργείας ἐστὶ τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἔξιν. ἥτις τῷ ἀνδρείῳ δὲ ἢ ἀνδρείᾳ καλὸν. τοιούτων δὴ καὶ τὸ τέλος· ὀρίζεται γάρ ἐκαστὸν τῷ τέλει. καλοῦ δὴ ἐνεκα ὁ ἀνδρείος ὑπομένει καὶ πράττει τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἀνδρείαν. τῶν δὲ ὑπερβαλλόντων ὁ μὲν τῇ ἄφοβίᾳ

ἀμαρτία, ἦ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3
ἀξία, ἦ: merit, worth, value, 2
ἀ-φοβία, ἦ: fearlessness, 2

13 τοῦτο (ἐστίν) ἐστί: it is possible
μᾶλλον καὶ ἦττον: too much and too little; ‘more and less’ the comparative degree can express express excess (S1082b)
14 ὡς τοιαῦτα: as if such; i.e. as if fearful; clause of comparison
15 φοβεῖσθαι: still governed by ἐστι

γίνεται...τοιούτων: Among the errors there comes to be this one, namely that he ought not, and this one, namely that (it is) not in what way he ought and this one, namely that (it is) not when (he ought) or any of such things; A very challenging sentence often simplified by translators. Apply the initial verb and partitive gen. to each of the four subjects.

ἥ μὲν...ἡ δὲ...ἡ δὲ: this...this; fem. sg. referring to ἁμαρτία; the accented article ἦ indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)

17 θαρραλέα: instances of confidence
ὁ μὲν...ὑπομένων καὶ φοβοῦμενος: the one...; pres. pples and single subject ᾧ δὲ: (the things) which...; add antecedent as obj. of pples
ὁ ἐνεκα: and (that) for the sake of which;

ἐν-ἐργεία, ἦ: activity, active exercise, 8
θαρραλέως,-ον: confident, bold, 6
ὁρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 6

add antecedent as obj. of pples

18 καὶ ὡς δὲι καὶ ὅτε (δεῖ): both...and...; within the preceding participle phrases
19 ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): pred.

κατὰ ἄξιαν: according to what is due; ‘according to merit’
ὡς ἐν ὁ λόγοις: as if reason...; conditional clause of comparison (equiv. to pres. gen. protasis) with missing verb; see 1115b12

21 τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἔξιν (τέλος): that (end) corresponding to the disposition

τοιο...καλὸν: A obelus (†) indicates that the words are plainly corrupt but the editor cannot see how to emend it. Omit in translation.

22 τοιοῦτον δὴ καὶ (ἐστίν): such indeed also (is)...; δὴ is an intensive

ἐκαστὸν: each (habit); subject

τῷ τέλει: by...; dat. of mean

23 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential

τὰ κατὰ...: (actions) corresponding to...; or ‘in accordance with...’

24 τῶν δὲ ὑπερβαλλόντων: among those...; i.e. people; pres. pple and partitive gen.

ὁ μὲν: the one (exceeding)...

τῇ ἄφοβίᾳ: in...; dat. of respect
άνώνυμος (ἐφηται δ' ἡμῖν ἐν τοῖς πρότερον ὅτι πολλὰ ἔστων ἀνώνυμα), εἴθε δ' ἂν τις μανόμενος ἦν ἀνάλγυτος, εἰ μη- δὲν φοβαίτο, μήτε σεισμόν μήτε κύματα, καθάτερ φαύλοι τοὺς Κελτούς· ὁ δὲ τῷ θαρρεῖν ὑπερβάλλων περὶ τὰ φοβερὰ θρασύς. δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ ἀλαζόν ἦν τοῦ θρασύς καὶ προσποιητικός ἀνδρείας· ὡς γονὸν ἐκεῖνος περὶ τὰ φοβερὰ ἔχει, νὸς δοῦλεται φαινεσθαί· ἐν οἷς οἷς δύναται, μμείται. διὸ καὶ εἰσὶν οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν θρασύδειλοι· ἐν τούτοις γὰρ θρασυνόμενοι τὰ φοβερὰ οἷς ὑπομένουσιν. ὁ δὲ τῷ φοβεῖσθαι ὑπερβάλλων δειλός· καὶ γὰρ ἡ μὴ δεῖ καὶ ὡς οὖ δεῖ καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀκολουθεῖ αὐτῷ.
ἐλλείπει δὲ καὶ τῷ θαρρεῖν ἀλλ᾽ ἐν ταῖς λύπαις ὑπερβάλλων μᾶλλον καταφανῆς ἐστιν. δύσελπις δὴ τις ὁ δειλὸς: πάντα γὰρ φοβεῖται. ὁ δὲ ἀνδρείος ἐναντίως: τὸ γὰρ θαρρεῖν εὐέλπιδος. περὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ὃ τε δειλὸς καὶ ὁ θρασύς καὶ ὁ ἀνδρείος, διαφόρως δ᾽ ἔχουσι πρὸς αὐτά: οἱ μὲν γὰρ ὑπερβάλλουσι καὶ ἐλλείπουσιν, ὃ δὲ μέσως ἔχει καὶ ως δεῖ· καὶ οἱ μὲν θρασεῖς προπετείς, καὶ θουλόμενοι πρὸ τῶν κινδύνων ἐν αὐτοῖς δ᾽ ἀφίστανται, οἱ δ᾽ ἀνδρείοι ἐν τοῖς ἔργοις ὄξεις, πρότερον δ᾽ ἰσχύοι.

Καθάπερ οὖν εἰρηται, ἡ ἀνδρεία μεσοτής ἐστὶ περὶ θαρραλεά καὶ φοβερά, ἐν οἷς εἰρηται, καὶ οὐ ποτὲ εἰρηται καὶ ὑπομενεῖ, ἡ οὐ τοιχρὸν τὸ μή. τὸ δ᾽ ἀποθνήσκειν

άπο-θνήσκο: to die, die off, perish, 4
ἀφ-ισττιμ: set apart, remove; mid. withdraw 4
δια-φόρως: differently, with a difference, 1
δυσ-ελπίς, -ιδος: without help, despondent, 1
ἐναντίως: in an opposite or contrary way, 2
ἐν-ελπίς, -ιδος, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5
ἡσύχιος, -ον: calm, quiet, at rest, 1
θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

καθ-ἀπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
κατα-φανῆς, -ές: clearly seen, evident, 1
μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3
ὀξύς, -είς, -υ: sharp, quick, keen, 1
πρὸ: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
προ-πετής, -ές: falling headlong; reckless, 1
πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8
προπετείς (εἰσίν)
προ...: before...; i.e. in time; preposition modifies the pple
ἐν αὐτοῖς: ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις
ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. mid.; as here, the mid. is often reflexive in meaning
9 ὄξεις (εἰσίν)
πρότερον: comparative adv.
10 εἰρηται: it...; impersonal pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
11 ἐν οἷς: in what circumstances
ὅτι καλὸν (ἐστίν): because it is noble
12 ὅτι αἰσχρὸν (ἐστίν) τὸ μή: see above
tὸ μή: not to (do) so; articular inf. and logical subject
τὸ δ᾽ ἀποθνησκεῖν: articular inf. (-ing)
πολιτικός, -ής, -όν: of a citizen, political
Πουλυδάμας, ὁ: Poullydamas, 1
tιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8
τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5

Πουλυδάμας μοι πρῶτος ελεγχεῖν ἀναθήσει: (II. 22.100)
καὶ [Διομήδης]

13 φεύγοντα: pple modifies the missin acc. subject of the inf.

15 δὴ καλὸν (ἐστίν): because it...

16 τοιούτοι τι: something of this sort

λέγονται δὲ καὶ ἔτεραι (ἀνδρεία): other (virtues) are also called “courage;” i.e. the word ‘courage’ is used in five different ways

catὰ πέντε πρότους: in five ways

17 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.

ἡ πολιτικὴ (ἀνδρεία): (courage) of a citizen; or ‘political (courage)’

20 ἀνδρείατοι: superlative; nom. subject παρ(ά) ὦς: (those) for whom...; the missing antecedent is nom. pred.; παρά + dat. here mean ‘in the opinion of whom’ (S1692.2b), similar to a dative of reference

21 ἔντιμοι (εἶναί)

22 ποιεῖ: portrays

οἶνον: for example; ‘in respect to which’

23 Πουλυδάμας...: This is an important line. Hector had made a strategic error that had been opposed earlier by Polydamus and other Trojans. At this point Hector realizes his error but rather than enter the city and face the Trojans, his sense of honor and shame compels him to stay outside the city walls and fight Achilles

24 καὶ [Διομήδης]: and Diomedes (says)
’Εκτωρ γάρ ποτε φήσει ἐνὶ Τρώεσσ’ ἀγορεύων
’Τυδείδης ὑπ’ ἐμείο.’

(II. 8.148)

ὡμοιώτατ δ’ αὐτῇ μάλιστα τῇ πρῶτερον εἰρημένη, ὅτι δ’ ἀρετὴν γίνεται: δ’ αἰδώ γάρ καὶ διὰ καλὸν ὁρέξων (τιμῆς γάρ) καὶ φυγήν ὑνείδους, αἰσχροῦ ὄντος, τάξας δ’ ἂν τις καὶ τοὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἄρχοντων ἀναγκαζομένους εἰς ταύτ’ 

χείρους δ’, ὅσω ὥσι νὰ ἀιδῶ ἄλλα διὰ φόβων αὐτὸ δρώσι, καὶ φείγοντες οὐ τὸ τάσις ἄλλα τὸ λυπηρὸν: ἀναγκάζουσι γάρ οἱ κύριοι, ὠςπερ ὁ Ἑκτωρ

ὅν δὲ κ’ ἐγών ἀπάνευθε μάχης πτώσοσιν νόησώ, οὐ οἱ ἄρκιοι ἐσσεῖται φυγέει κύνας.

(II. 2.391)

καὶ οἱ προστάττοντες, κἂν ἀναχωρῶσι τυπτοντες, τὸ αὐτὸ

άγορεύω: to proclaim, speak publicly, 1
αἴδω, -όρω, ἤ: sense of shame, 3
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8
ἀνα-χορέω: to go back, withdraw, retreat, 1
ἀπάνευθε: afar off, far away, 1
ἀρκιος, -ας, -ον: sufficient, enough, reliable, 1
ἀρχο: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3
δράσω: to do, 4
ἔγώ (ἔγων, ἐμεῖο=ἐμοῦ): I, 3
’Εκτωρ, ὁ: Hector, 3
κύνας, κυνός, ὁ: dog, 2
μάχη: battle, fight, combat, 1
νοέω: to see; mean; intend, consider, think, 1
ὀμιλοῦσα: to make like; pass. to be like (dat), 1

25 ’Εκτωρ: Hector leads the Trojans in an attack on the Greeks and almost burns all of their ships. Nestor has just asked Greek Diomedes to retreat, but Diomedes lingers and notes what Hector will say about him. 

φήσει: fut. φησί
ἐν: ἐν
Τυδείδης ὑπ’ ἐμείο: By me the son of Tydeus...; an incomplete sentence

27 ὀμιλοῦσα: pf. pass. πάσχω
αὐτῇ (ἢ ἀνδρεία): this (type of courage)
τῇ...εἰρημένῃ: the one...; pf. pass. παλέγω (ἐρεώ); i.e the ἀνδρεία
ὁτί because...

28 δ’ αἰδῶ: διὰ(α) αἰδός; acc. sg. (S266) (τιμῆς γάρ): (i.e. of honor); explanatory γάρ (S2808): ‘for example’ or ‘that is’

29 ὑνείδους: ὑνείδε-ος, gen. sg.
αἰσχροῦ ὄντος: causal gen. abl., εἰμί
τάξας ἂν: might...; 3s aor. potential opt.

30 τοὺς...ἀναγκαζομένους: those...
ὕπο τῶν ἄρχοντων: by their rulers
ἐὰς τὰ(α) αὐτό: into the same (group as the courageous)

31 χείρον(υ)ς δ’ (εἰαῖν): but (they are)...; pred.
καὶ: inasmuch as...; ‘by as much as’

33 αἱ κύριοι: their masters

34 δὲ δὲ...: Whomever I see covering from battle, for him there will be no hope to escape the dogs

36 οἱ προστάττοντες καὶ(α) ἢ ἄναχωρῶσι τύπτοντες: and those commanding and striking (the troops) if (the troops) withdraw to αὐτό: i.e. same as the κύριοι above
δρώσι, καὶ οἱ πρὸ τῶν τάφρων καὶ τῶν τοιούτων παρατάττοντες: πάντες γὰρ ἀναγκάζουσιν. δὲι δ᾽ οὐ δι᾽ ἀνάγκην ἀν-δρείον εἶναι, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι καλὸν. δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ ἡ ἐμπειρία ἡ περὶ ἔκαστα ἀνδρεία εἶναι: οἶδεν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὠήθη ἐπιστήμην εἶναι τὴν ἀνδρείαν. τοιούτοι δὲ άλλοι μὲν ἐν ἀλ-λοις, ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς δ᾽ οἱ στρατιώται: δοκεῖ γὰρ εἶναι πολλὰ κενὰ τοῦ πολέμου, ἀ μάλιστα συνεωράκασιν οὗτοι: φαίνονται δὴ ἀνδρείοι, ὅτι οὐκ ἴδαν οἱ άλλοι οἷς ἐστών. εἶτα ποιῆσαι καὶ μὴ παθεῖν μάλιστα δύνανται ἐκ τῆς ἐμ-πειρίας, δυνάμενοι χρῆσθαι τοὺς ὁπλοῦς καὶ τοιοῦτα ἔχον-τες ὁποία ἀν εἶ καὶ πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ μὴ παθεῖν κράτιστα: ἀὔσπερ οὖν ἀνόπλους ὡπλισμένου μάχον-

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8
ἀνάγκη, ἥ: necessity, force, compulsion, 3
ἀν-όπλος, -ον: unarmed, without shield, 1
δράω: to do, 4
δύναμι: to be able, can, be capable, 9
ἐίτα: then, next, and so, therefore, 2
ἐμπειρία, ἡ: experience, 4
ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: knowledge, understanding, 4
κεφώς, -ῆς, -ῶν: empty, destitute, bereft, 1
κράτιστος, -ῆς, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 3
μάχομαι: to fight, 3
δ-δεν: for which reason; from where, 7
οἴμαι (οἴμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5

1 καὶ οἱ...παρατάττοντες: and those...; a third example; i.e. leaders over troops ἐν πρό...: in front of...
2 ἀναγκάζουσιν: supply ‘troops’ as obj.
3 δηι καλὸν (ἔστιν): because...
ὴ περὶ ἔκαστα: concerning particular (cases); in attributive position
4 ὀφθῆνα: 3s aor. pass. dep. οἴμαι: translate in simple past
5 ἐπιστήμην...ἀνδρεῖαν: that...; ind. disc. τοιοῦτοι δὲ ἄλλοι ἐν ἄλλοις ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς δ᾽ οἱ στρατιώται: (as) different sorts of men (are courageous) in different circumstances, (so) soldiers (are courageous) in wars
6 πολλὰ: many (actions); neut. pl.
τοῖς πολέμου: from...; gen. of separation συνεωράκασιν: 3p pf.
7 ὡπλίζω: to arm, furnish with arms, 1
ὁπλοῦ, τοῦ: arms; tool, implement, 2
ὁποίος, -ης, -ῶν: of what sort or kind, 2
παρα-τάτω: draw up in battle order, 1
πολεμικός, -ῆς, -ῶν: of war, warlike, 2
πόλεμος, ὁ: war, 4
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
στρατιώτης, -ος, -ον: soldier, 3
συν-οράω: to observe, see in detail, 1
Σωκράτης, -ος, ὁ: Socrates, 1
τάφρος, ὁ: a ditch, trench, 1
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7

οὗτοι: i.e. the οἱ στρατιῶται
8 φαίνονται: (those doing these activities) seem...
δηι: because...
Ἰσαια: 3p οἴδα; pf. in form, but present in translation
ὁλα: what sort (of actions)...; ind. question
9 ποιήσαι καὶ μὴ παθεῖν: to make (an attack) and not suffer; aor. inf. πάσχω
(οἱ στρατιῶται) δύνανται: add subject
10 δυνάμενοι: modifying the missing subject
11 ὁποία ἀν εἶ: would...; relative clause with potential opt. εἴμι
πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι: in regard to making (an attack)
12 κράτιστα: neut. pl. pred. of ἀν εἶ
ἀνόπλοιος: with...against...; dat. association ὡπλισμένοι: pf. pass. pple
At the beginning of this battle, Boeotian mercenaries fled and abandoned the people. 

"Ερμιασ, ὁ: of Hermès, 1

"Συνέβη: aor. tel.

τοις μὲν...οὶ δὲ...: to these (citizens)...those (mercenaries)...

αἰσχρὸν (ἔστιν): pred.

τῆς...σωτηρίας: than...; gen. comparison

αἰρετῶτερος (ἔστιν): comparative

"Ως..."οτε: on the grounds that...; ‘since...’

"Ως + ppe expresses alleged cause from a character’s point of view

κρείττων (νέων): nom. pred.

γυνότερος: aor. pple γυναίκακο

τοῦ αἰσχροῦ: gen. comparison

καὶ τὸν θυμὸν...φέροντι: They also apply Spirit onto Courage; θυμὸς is the third of the five types of ἀνδρείᾳ mentioned in 1116;α16-7

At the beginning of this battle, Boeotian mercenaries fled and abandoned the people.
ὁσπερ τὰ θηρία ἐπὶ τοὺς πρώσαντας φερόμενα, ὅτι καὶ οἱ ἀνδρείοι θυμωείδεις ἢ ἱττυκώτατον γὰρ ὁ θυμὸς πρὸς τοὺς κυδῶνους, ὅθεν καὶ Ἰομηρὸς “σθένος ἐμβάλει θυμῷ” καὶ “μένος καὶ θυμὸν ἐγείρε” καὶ “ὁμοί δ’ ἀνά ρίνος μένος” καὶ “ἐξεσει αἷμα” πάντα γὰρ τὰ τουαύτα ἔσωκε σημαίνει ἡ τοῦ θυμοῦ ἐγείρον καὶ ὀρμή. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄνδρείοι διὰ τὸ καλὸν πράττουσιν, ὁ δὲ θυμὸς συνεργεῖ αὐτοῖς: τὰ θηρία δὲ διὰ λύπην διὰ γὰρ τὸ πληγήναι ἡ διὰ τὸ φοβείσθαι, ἐπεὶ εἶ ἐν ἑν Ὕλη [ἡ ἐν Ἐλεί] ἡ, οὗ προσέρχονται. οὐ δὴ ἔστω ἄνδρεία διὰ τὸ ὑπ’ ἀλγηδόνοι καὶ θυμοῦ ἐξελαυνόμενα πρὸς τὸν κύδωνον ὀρμάν, οὐθὲν τῶν δεινῶν προοράντα, ἐπεὶ οὔτω γε κἂν οἱ οὖν ἄνδρείοι εἶνεν πεινώντες· τυπτόμενοι γὰρ

αἷμα, -atos τό: blood, 1
ἀλγηδών, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
ἄνα: up, upon, up to, 1
δεινός, -ής, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
δριμός, -είς, -ύ: bitter, sharp, piercing, 1
ἔγειρω: to rouse, stir up, awaken, 1
ἔγερσις, -εος, ἡ: rousing, stirring up, 1
ἐλος, -εος, τό: meadow (by a river), 1
ἐμπαλλω: to put in, throw in, 1
ἐξελαύνω: to drive out; march out, 2
ζέω: to boil, seethe, 1
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast, 2
θυμοείδης, ὁ: spirited, high-spirited, 1
ἱττυκότς, ἰ, -όν: ready to encounter, 1
μένος, -εος, τό: might, force, 2
δ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7

25 ἐπὶ... upon; aor. pple τιτρώσκω
φερόμενα: rushing...; ‘carried along,’ i.e. wounded animals attacking the hunters
ὅπως: because...
26 ἱττυκώτατον (ἐστίν): (is something)...; the neut. pred. is a substantive
27 ἐμβάλε: he put...in (dat); aor., governs and acc. and dat. of compound verb
28 δριμ...: a bitter might (went) up his nose
29 αὐτοῖς: with...; dat. of compound verb
30 διὰ λύπην (πράττουσιν)
τὸ πληγήνα: being...; aor. pass. articular inf. (-ing) πλήττω
to πληγήνα: being...; aor. pass. articular inf. (-ing) πλήττω
33 ἐπει...γε: since indeed...; emphatic γε εἶ...γε, προσέρχομαι: if...; pres. general

"Ομηρός, ὁ: Homer, 4
ὁμοί, ὁ, ἡ: a mule, 1
ὄρμα: to set in motion; set out, begin, 1
ὄρμη, ἡ: impulse, 1
πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 3
πλήττω: to strike, beat, 1
προ-οράω: to foresee, see beforehand, 1
προσ-ἐρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 1
ῥίς, ῥίνος, ἡ: the nose, 1
σημαίνω: to indicate, point out 1
σθένος, -εος, τό: strength, 1
συν-ἐφέργω: cooperate, work together with 1
τιτρώσκω: to wound, inflict, damage, 1
τύπτω: to strike, beat, 3
ὑλή, ἡ: subject matter, matter; woods, 2
φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6

(ἐάν + subj., pres. ind.); 3s pres. subj. εἰμί [ἡ ἐν Ἐλεί]: omit from translation. The editor suggests these lines were inserted at a later time.
34 δή: therefore, then; inferential (τὰ θηρία ἐστίν...: (wild animals) are not... τὸ...ἀρμάν: articular inf. (-ing)
ὑπό...: by...; gen. of cause
ἐξελαυνόμενα: when...; pple modifying the missing acc. subj. τὰ θηρία
35 οὐθὲν: οὐθέν
προοράντα: modifying τὰ θηρία
36 ἐπεὶ...γε: since...indeed
καὶ ἄν...: even...would; potential opt. εἰμί
οὐκ ἀφίστανται τῆς νομῆς· καὶ οἱ μοιχοὶ δὲ διὰ τὴν ἐπι-
θυμίαν τομῆρα πολλὰ δρόσων. [οὗ δὴ ἐστὶν ἄνδρεία τὰ δὲ
ἀλγηδόνος ἢ θυμός έξελαυνόμενα πρὸς τὸν κάδινον.]

φυσικωτάτη ὃ έσκιν ἢ διὰ τὸν θυμὸν εἶναι, καὶ προσ-
λαβοῦσα προαίρεσιν καὶ τὸ οὗ ἐνεκα ἄνδρεία εἶναι. καὶ οἱ
ἀνθρωποι δὴ ὁργίζομενοι μὲν ἀλγοῦσί, τιμωροῦμενοι δ᾽ ἤδον-
tαι· οἱ δὲ διὰ ταῦτα μαχόμενοι μάχιμοι μὲν, οὐκ ἄν-
dρείοι δὲ· οὐ γὰρ διὰ τὸ καλὸν οὐδ᾽ ὡς ο λόγος, ἀλλὰ
diὰ τάδος· παραπλήσιον δ᾽ ἔχουσί τι. οὐδὲ δὴ οἱ εὐθυ-
tίδες ὡστε ἄνδρείοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πολλάκις καὶ πολλοὺς
νενυκηκέναι θαρραλώσειν ἐν τοῖς καινοῦσι· παρόμοιοι δὲ, ὡτι
ἄμφω θαρραλέοι· ἀλλ᾽ οἱ μὲν ἄνδρείοι διὰ τὰ πρότερον εἰρη-

άλγεω: to feel pain, suffer, grief, 2
ἀλγηδόνος, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
ἀνφί: both (dual), 8
ἀφιστάμη: set apart, remove; mid. withdraw 4
δρᾶο: to do, 4
ἐξ-ελαυνώ: to drive out; march out, 2
ἐξ-ελπις, -εδός, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5
ἐδομά: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6
μάχιμος, -ης, -ον: fit for battle, warlike, 2
μάχιμαι: to fight, 3

1 ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. mid.
2 τῆς νομῆς: gen. of separation
3 οὗ...καὶνοῦν: omit; The editor suggests that these words were inserted at a later
time: here, repeated from 1116b33-5
4 ἢ διὰ τὸν θυμὸν (ἄνδρεία): the type of
courage because of spirit; i.e. the courage that arises from spirit
5 τὸ οὗ ἐνεκα: that for the sake of which; i.e.
the purpose; obj. of the pple
(εσκιν) ἄνδρεία εἶναι: inf. and pred.
governed by the main verb
6 τιμωροῦμενοι: by...; causal pres. mid. pple
μάχιμοι μὲν (εἰσιν

μοιχός: adulterer, 1
νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 2
νομή, ἡ: grazing, pasture, food, 1
παρα-πλήσιος, -ας, -ον: resembling, similar, 1
παρ-όμοιος, -ας, -ον: nearly like, resembling, 1
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 4
προσ-λαμβάνω: take in addition, add, 1
πρότερος, -ας, -ον: previous, earlier, 8
τιμωρέω: to avenge, exact vengeance, 2
tολμήρος, -άς, -ον: daring, hardy, 1
φυσικός, -ης, -όν: produced by nature, natural, 6
8 οὐδ(...) ὡς ο λόγος: nor as reason (directs);
clause of comparison
9 ἔχουσα: supply ‘those with spirit’ as subject
οὔδε δὴ: nor indeed
10 ἄνδρείοι (εἰσιν
τὸ...νενυκηκέναι: pf. articular inf. (-ing)
11 παρόμοιοι δὲ: (the hopeful are) similar (to
the courageous)
δὴ: because...
12 τά...εἰρημένα: things...; pf. pass. pple
λέγω (ἐρέω)
πρότερον: adverbial acc.
Forms of Courage (III.8) 1117a

ména tharraleioi, oí dé ἄν παθεῖν. toioi ton dé ποιοῦσι καὶ οἱ μεθυσκόμενοι· εὐέλπιδες γὰρ γίνονται. ὅταν δὲ αὐτοῖς μὴ συμβῇ τὰ τοιαῦτα, φεύγουσιν ἀνδρείου δ᾽ ἣν τὰ φοβερὰ ἀνθρώπῳ ὄντα καὶ φαινόμενα ὑπομένειν, ὅτι καλὸν καὶ αἰσχρὸν τὸ μή. διὸ καὶ ἀνδρειοτέρου δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ἐν τοῖς αἰσθιόδους φόβοις ἀφοβοι καὶ ἀτάραχοι εἰναι ἤν εἰς τοῖς προδήλοις· ἀπὸ ἑξεως γὰρ μᾶλλον ἦν, ὅτι ἤττον ἐκ παρασκευῆς· τὰ προφανή μὲν γὰρ κἂν ἐκ λογισμοῦ καὶ λόγῳ τίς προέλοιτο, τὰ δ᾽ ἐξαιρήσεις κατὰ τὴν ἑξίαν. ἀνδρείοι δὲ φαίνονται καὶ οἱ ἁγνοοῦντες, καὶ εἰσὶν οἱ πόρρω τῶν εὐελπίδων, χείρους δ᾽ ὁσφ ἄξιωμα οὐδὲν ἐχουσιν, ἐκεῖνοι δὲ. διὸ καὶ μένουσι τινα

13 οἱ δὲ (εἰσὶν θαρράλεοι): those...; i.e. those with θυμός; the accented article is a demonstrative
tὸ οἴεσθαι: articular inf. (-ing), οἴσαι
14 μηδὲν: μηδὲν
ἀν παθεῖν: (that) they would...; ἀν and articular aor. inf. equiv. to the potential opt. of a finite verb
καί: in fact, actually
15 ὅταν...καὶ: whenever...; general temporal clause with 3s aor. subj.
αὐτοῖς: to...; dat. of interest
16 ἀνδρείου δ᾽ ἦν: it was (the mark) of the courageous man...; gen. of quality as pred.
ἀνθρώπῳ: to...; dat. interest and reference (viewpoint)
17 ὧτι (ἐστίν) καλὸν: because...
aἰσχροῦ (ἐστίν) τὸ μή
τὸ μή: not to (do) so; articular inf. and logical subject

18 ἀνδρειοτέρου: (a mark) of...; gen. of quality following the inf. εἰμι
tὸ...ἐναι: articular inf. and logical subject ἐν τοῖς προδήλοις (φόβοις)
20 ἦν: it was...; i.e. to be fearless in the face of sudden fears; impf. εἰμι
ὁτι (ἐν): because (it was)...
tὰ προφανῆ: i.e. dangers or fears
21 καὶ ἄν...προέλοιτο: in fact...might...; aor. potential opt. προ-αιρέσι (aor. ἐλ-) τὰ δ᾽ ἐξαιρήσεις: i.e. dangers or fears
22 οἱ ἁγνοοῦντες: the 5th and final of the five types often called courageous
cατὰ: according to...
23 τῶν εὐελπίδων: from...; gen. separation
χεῖρος(ες) (εἰσίν): they are...; nom. pres., the subject is οἱ ἁγνοοῦντες from l. 22
24 διὸ: inasmuch as...; ‘by as much as’
ἐκεῖνοι δὲ (ἀξίωμα ἐχουσιν): but...; i.e. the courageous
χρόνον· οἱ δ’ ἡπατημένοι, ἐὰν γνώσων ὧτι ἔτερον ἢ ὑπο-
πτεύσωσι, φεύγουσιν· ὅπερ οἱ Ἀργεῖοι ἐπαθον περιπεσόντες
τοῖς Δάκωσιν ὡς Σικυωνίωισ. οἱ τε δὴ ἄνδρειοι εἰρηται
ποιοὶ τινες, καὶ οἱ δοκοῦντες ἄνδρειοι.

9. Περὶ θάρρης δὲ καὶ φόβους ἡ ἄνδρεια οὔσα οὐχ ὁμοιως
περὶ ἁμφότερον ἦστιν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον περὶ τὰ φοβερά· ὁ γὰρ
ἐν τούτων ἀτάραχος, καὶ τερτον ἢ δὲ ἔχων ἄνδρειος
μᾶλλον ἢ ὧ περὶ τὰ ταραξάλεα. τῷ δὴ τὰ λυπώτα ὑπο-
μένειν, ὡς εἰρηται, ἄνδρειοι λέγονται. διὸ καὶ ἐπίλυμαν ἡ
ἄνδρεια, καὶ δικαίως ἐπανείπται̣ χαλεπώτερον γὰρ τὰ λυ-
πῶρα ὑπομένειν ἢ τῶν ἠδέων ἀπέχεσθαι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ

25 τινα χρόνου: for…; acc. of duration
ἡπατημένοι: those…; pf. pass. pple
ἐὰν γνώσων…ὑποπτεύσωσι, φεύγουσιν:  ἢ
to come to know, learn, 3
γιγνώσκω: unperturbed, not disturbed, 2
τρίχωσι, ὁ: Laconian, Spartan, 1
μὴν: truly, surely, 5
δὲ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
περὶ-πίπτω: to fall in with, attack (dat), 1
Σικυωνίοι, ὁ: Sicyonians (Grk. people), 1
ὑπο-πτεύω: to be suspicious, suspect, 1
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8
χρόνος, ὁ: time, 3

29 θάρρη: θάρρη-α-ι; neut. pl. θάρρος
οὔσα: (although)…; pple εἰμί is concessive
and includes ἐπί θάρρης καὶ φόβους
don't miss:

31 ἐν τούτωι: i.e. among fearful things
(οὐτως) ἔχων: being disposed; ἔχω + adv.,
here missing
ὡς δὲ: as…; clause of comparison
γoverned by ἔχων
ἄνδρειος μᾶλλον (ἔστιν): pred.

32 ὁ περὶ τὰ ταραξάλεα (ὡς δὲ ἔχων): the
one…; ellipsis
tαὐτο…ὑπομένειν: by…; articular inf. and dat.
of means or cause
δὴ: then, therefore; inferential

33 ἔρημται: it…; impersonal pf. pass. λέγω
(ἐρέω)
λέγονται: they are called

34 χαλεπώτερον (ἔστιν): (it is)…; impersonal
construction with comparative adj.

35 τῶν ἠδέων: from…; gen. of separation
οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ: nevertheless; (S2767)
Relation of Courage to Pleasure and Pain (III.9)  

άγων, ἀγώνος, ὁ: contest, athletic contest, 2 ἀκων, -ουσα, -ου: involuntary, unwilling, 8 ἀλγινος, -ῆς, -ῶν: grievous, painful, 1 ἄξιος, -α, -ων: worthy, worthwhile, 1 ἄπο-στερέω: to rob, deprive of, 1 ἁ-φανίζω: to make invisible or disappear, 1 γυμνικός, -ῆς, -ῶν: of gymnastic exercise, 1 ἐ-τερ: if really, if actually, 1 εὖ-δαίμων, -ου: happy, well off, 1 ζάω: to live, 4 1 δόξειν ἂν: would...; aor. potential opt. κατὰ...: corresponding to... τῶν κύκλω: circumstances; ‘things around’ κύκλω is an adv. in the attributive position 2 οἷον... γίγνεται: which sort of thing...; ‘just as,’ the antecedent is the preceding clause καὶ( ὁ: experience; perfect πάσχω 3 τοῖς πύκταις: for...; dat. of interest ἡδύ (ἐστί): 4 οὗ ἔνεκα: (that) for the sake of which; i.e. the purpose; in apposition to τέλος ὁ στεφανος... τιμαί: in apposition to τέλος 4 τὸ δὲ τύπτεσθαι (ἐστί): but...; subject ἐπερ σάρκινοι εἰσύναι: if (they are) really flesh and blood καὶ λυπηρῶν: nom. pred. with ἀλγινῶν 5 καὶ πᾶς ὁ πόνος (ἐστὶν ἀλγινός καὶ λυπηρός): ellipsis and adverbial καὶ, ‘also’ τὸ... ἐναί: these (pains)...; ταῦτα is acc. subj. and πολλά is acc. pred. 6 μικρὸν ὅν: since...; causal pres. pple εἴμι κύκλως, ὁ: a circle, ring; circumstances, 2 μέγιστος, -ῆς, -ῶν: very large, greatest, most important, 4 πόνος, ὁ: work, tool, 2 πύκτης, -ου: boxer, 1 σάρκινος, -ῆς, -ῶν: of flesh, 1 στεφανος, ὁ: crown, 1 τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8 τραύμα, τὸ: wound, damage, disaster, 1 τύπτω: to strike, beat, 3 τὸ οὗ ἔνεκα: that for the sake of which; i.e. the purpose; nom. subj. 7 δὴ: then, therefore; inferential καὶ: also τὸ περὶ τὴν ἀνδρείαν (τέλος) 8 λυπηρὰ: nom. pred. τῷ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ ἄκουστι: for...; dat. interest 9 ὅτι (ἐστὶ) καλὸν: because... ὅτι (ἐστί) αἰσχρόν: because... τὸ μὴ: not to (do) so; articular inf. and logical subject 10 ὅσοι ἵν τι μᾶλλον... πάσαν... μᾶλλον: the more complete... the more...; lit. ‘by as much more complete...(by this much) more,’ the relative ὅσοι is dat. of degree of difference and modifies μᾶλλον ἃν... ἔχη... ἢ: has... is; general rel. clause τῷ τοιοῦτῳ: το...; dat. interest 12 ζῆν: α-contract inf. ζάω ἄξιον (ἐστί): (it is)...; impersonal μεγίστων ἀγαθῶν: from...; gen. separation
στρειται ειδως, λυπηρων δε τοιτο. άλλο ουδεν ήττον ανδρεως, ίσως δε και μαλλων, οτι το εν το εν πολεμω καλον αντι έκεινων αιρεται. ου δη εν απάσαις τας άρεταις το ηδεως ενεργων ύπαρχει, πλην εφ άσον τοι τέλους εφαπτεται. οποτε τοι άνθρωπου καιρος καιρων καταλλάττειν παρεις εν των ανδρεων, άλλο δε άγαθων μη δεν έχονται έτοιμοι γαρ ουτοι προς τοις κωδωνοις, και τον βίον προς μικρά κέρδη καταλάττονται. παρεις ουν ανδρειας έτι τοσουτον ειρήθων τι δε έστιν, ου χαλεπον τύπω γε περιλαβειν εκ των εγγευμονων.

10. Μετα δε ταυτην περι συφρουσης λέγομεν: δοκουσι γαρ των αλόγων μερων αναίειν ειναι αι άρεται. οτι μεν
Temperance as a Pleasure of Touch (III.10) 1117b

οὖν μεσότης ἐστὶ περὶ ἡδονᾶς ἡ σωφροσύνη, ἐφηται ἡμῶν· ἦττον γὰρ καὶ οὐχ ὁμοίως ἐστὶ περὶ τὰς λύπας· ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ ἡ ἀκολογία φαίνεται. περὶ ποίας οὖν τῶν ἡδονῶν, νῦν ἀφορίσωμεν. διήρηθωσαν δὴ αἱ ψυχικαὶ καὶ αἱ σωματικαί, οἷον φιλοτιμία φιλομάθεια· ἐκάτερος γὰρ τούτων χαίρει, οὖν φιλητικὸς ἦστων, οὐδὲν πάσχοντος τοῦ σώματος, ἀλλὰ ἀκάλλον τῆς διανοίας· οἱ δὲ περὶ τὰς τοιαύτας ἡδονᾶς οὔτε σώφρονες οὔτε ἀκόλαστοι λέγονται. ὁμοίως δ’ οὖν οἱ περὶ τὰς ἄλλας ὡς καὶ σωματικὴ εἶναι τοὺς γὰρ φιλομόδους καὶ διηγητικοὺς καὶ περὶ τῶν τυχόντων κατατρίβοντας τὰς ἡμέρας ἀδολέσχας, ἀκολάστοις δ’ οὖν.
λέγομεν, οὐδὲ τοὺς λυπουμένους ἐπὶ χρήμασιν ἡ φίλοις. περὶ
dὲ τὰς σωματικὰς ἐκ ἤν ἡ σωφροσύνη, οὐ πάσας δὲ οὐδὲ
tαύτας: οἱ γὰρ χαίροντες τοῖς διὰ τῆς ὄψεως, οἷον χρώ-
μασι καὶ σχῆμασι καὶ γραφῆ, οὔτε σωφρονεῖς οὔτε ἀκό-
λαστοι λέγονται: καὶ τοὺς δόξειν ἦν εἶναι καὶ ὡς δεῖ χαί-
ρεως καὶ τοῦτος, καὶ καθ ὑπερβολὴν καὶ ἐλλεψιν. ὡμοῖος
dὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς περὶ τὴν ἀκόλουθον τοὺς γὰρ ὑπερβεβλημένως
χαίροντας μέλεσιν ἥν ὑποκρίσει οὐθεὶς ἀκόλοοντας λέγει, οὐδὲ
tοὺς ὡς δεῖ σωφρονεῖς. οὐδὲ τοὺς περὶ τὴν ὁμοῖαν, πλὴν κατὰ
συμβεβηκός: τοὺς γὰρ χαίροντας μήλων ἢ ῥόδων ἢ θυμα-
μάτων ὁσίαις οὐ λέγομεν ἀκόλοοντας, ἀλλὰ μάλλον τοὺς
μύρων ἢ ὄψεως χαίρονται γὰρ τοῦτοι οἱ ἀκόλοοντοι, ὅτι

ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1
gραφή, ἡ: drawing, painting; indictment, 1
θυμίαμα, -atos, ἡ: incense, 1
καὶ-τοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 2
μέλος, -eos, τὸ: song, tune; limb, 1
μῆλον, τὸ: fruit, tree-fruit, apple, 1
μύρον, τὸ: perfume, sweet oil, myrrh, 1
ὀσμή, ἡ: scent, smell, 5
ὄψις, -eos, ἡ: vision; appearance; face, 2

1 λέγομεν: we call (x) (y); governs a double
acc. (acc. obj. and pred.)
οὐδὲ: not even
ἐπὶ... at...; or ‘for...’ + dat. expressing
the motive with verbs of emotion ($1689.2c)
2 ἐὰν... would...; potential opt. ἐκ
οὗ (perip) πάσας δὲ οὐδὲ ταύτας: but not even...
3 τοῖς... at those things...; dat. obj. of
χαίρεως: preposition in attributive position
ὅσον: for example; ‘in respect to which sort’
5 δόξαιν ἄν...τοῦτοις: it would seem to be
possible in fact to enjoy these also as one
ought...; 3s aor. potential opt.; ἐναί here
means ‘to be able/possible’
6 καὶ κατ(ὰ)...καὶ...: both in...and...; ‘in

πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6
ῥόδον, τὸ: rose, 1
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
σχῆμα, -atos, τὸ: form, shape, 1
σωματικός, -ης, -ον, τὸ: bodily, of the body, 4
ὑπερβεβλημένως: exceedingly, 1
ὑπό-κρισις, -eos ἡ: acting (play); replying 1
φίλος -ης-ων: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 3
χρήμα, -atos, τὸ: money; property, 5
χρώμα, -atos, τὸ: color, complexion, 1

respect to...’
7 ἐν τοῖς: among those; preposition in
attributive position
8 μέλε-σιν ἡ ὑποκρίσις: dat. pl. and sg. obj.
οὔεις: οὔεις
οὔε τούς ὡς δεῖ (χαίροντας) σώφροντας
(λέγει)...: nor those...as...; acc. obj. and
pred.; add verb from above
9 ὡς δεῖ: as...; in the attributive position
οὐδὲ περὶ τὴν ὁμοῖαν (χαίροντας): nor...
κατὰ συμβεβηκός: by accident; ‘according
to what happens by chance;’ neut. pf. pple
συμ-βαίνω often used as a noun
11 ὁσίαις: dat. obj. of χαίροντας
τοὺς μύρων ἢ ὄψων (ὀσίαις χαίροντας)
12 ὅτι: because...
Temperance as a Pleasure of Touch (III.10) 1118a

διὰ τούτων ἀνάμμησις γίνεται αὐτὸς τῶν ἐπιθυμημάτων. ἵδι ὡς ἀν τις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλους, ὅταν πεινώσι, χαίρωσι ταῖς τῶν βρωμάτων ὀσμαῖς· τὸ δὲ τοιοῦτος χαίρειν ἀκολούθοι τούτῳ γὰρ ἐπιθυμήματα ταύτα. οὐκ ἔστι δὲ οὐδέ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις ξώοις κατὰ ταύτας τὰς αἰσθήσεις ἤδην πλὴν κατὰ συμβεβηκός. οὐδὲ γὰρ ταῖς ὀσμαῖς τῶν λαγων ἀι κῦνες χαίρουσιν ἀλλὰ τῇ βρώσει, τὴν δὲ αἰσθήσιν ἡ ὀσμή ἐποίησεν· οὐδέ οἱ λέων τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ βοῶς ἀλλὰ τῇ ἐδωδῇ. ὅτι δὲ ἐγγὺς ἐστιν, διὰ τῆς φωνῆς ἐσθετο, καὶ χαίρειν δὴ ταύτῃ φαίνεται· ὁμοίως δὲ οὐδὲ ἱδιῶν “Ἡ [εὐρών] ἔλαφον ἡ ἄγριον αἴγα,” ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι βορὰν ἔξει. περὶ τὰς τοιαύτας δ᾽ ἡδονῶς ἡ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἡ ἀκολούθια ἐστίν ἄν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ

13 αὐτοῖς: for them; i.e. for the ἀκόλαστοι ἵδιν δὲν: might...; aor. potential opt. ὅραω
14 ὅταν πεινώσι: general temporal clause with 3p pres. subj.
15 δὲ: but
16 τούτῳ: to...; dat. of interest
17 κατὰ συμβεβηκός: by accident; ‘according to what happens by chance;’ neut. pf. pple συμβαίνω often used as a noun
20 ὡς λέων (χαίρει) τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ βοῶς ἀλλὰ ἐπίθυμημα, -τος, τά: object of desire, 2
21 εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 2
22 ἄλοις: goat, 1
23 ξηρασίας: -εις, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7
24 ἄναμμης, ἡ: recollection, calling to mind, 1
25 βοῶς, βοῦς, ὡς: ox, 1
όμως κοινωνεί, δδεν ἀνδραποδώδεις καὶ θηριώδεις φαίνονται· ἀφταὶ δ' εἰσὶν ἀφῆ καὶ γεύσις. φαίνονται δὲ καὶ τῇ γεύσει ἐπὶ μικρὸν ἥ συνέχεια. τῆς γὰρ γεύσεως ἐστιν ἡ κρίσις τῶν χυμῶν, ὅπερ ποιοῦσιν οἱ τοὺς οὐνιοὺς δοκιμάζοντες καὶ τὰ ὁφα ἀρτύντες· οὐ πάνω δὲ χαίροντες τούτοις, ἥ συν ὁφα γε ἀκολαστοί, ἀλλὰ τῇ ἀπολαίψει, ἥ γίνεται πᾶσα δι᾽ ἀφῆς καὶ ἐν συτίως καὶ ἐν ποτίως καὶ τοῖς ἁφροδισίοις λεγομένοις. διὸ καὶ ηὔξατό τις ὀψωφάγος ὁν τὸν φαρυγγα αὐτῷ μακρότερον γεράνου γενέσθαι, ὡς ἡδόμενος τῇ μακρός, ἄ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 1 ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7 οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 1 ὅσπερ, ἦσπερ, ὅσπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9 ὅψι-φάγος, ὁ: fine-diner, 1 ὅψιν, τό: cooked or savory dish, 2 πάνω: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6 ποτός, ὁ: drink, 1 σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2 φάρυγξ, φάρυγγος, ὁ: throat, 1 χρόμαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7 χυμός, ὁ: flavor; juice, 1 ηὔξατό: aor. mid. ὃν: pres. pple εἰσὶν modifying τὰς τῶν φαρύγγα...γενέσθαι: that...; ind. disc. 33 (εὐτ): reflexive, dat. of possession; translate as a possessive γεράνου: than...; gen. of comparison ὃς ἡδόμενος...: on the grounds that..., in the belief that...; 'since' ὃς + pple expressing an alleged cause from a character's point of view
Temperance between Indulgence and Insensibility (III.11)

ἀφὴ. κοινοτάτη δὴ τῶν αἰσθήσεων καθ ἣν ἡ ἀκολασία· καὶ δόξειν ἄν δικαῖως ἐπονειδίστως εἶναι, ὅτι οὐχ ἢ ἄνθρω- 
ποί ἑσμεν ὑπάρχει, ἀλλὰ ἢ ζῶν. τὸ δὴ τοιοῦτοι χαίρειν 
καὶ μάλιστα ἀγάπατε ἥρμιδας. καὶ γὰρ αἱ ἐλευθερώτα-
ται τῶν διὰ τῆς ἀφῆς ὑδνων ἀφήρηνται, οἶον αἱ ἐν τοῖς 
γυμνασίοις διὰ τράφεως καὶ τῆς θερμασίας γνώμεναι· οὐ 
γὰρ περὶ πάν τὸ σῶμα ἡ τοῦ ἀκολάστου ἀφῆ, ἀλλὰ περὶ 
twn μέρη. 11. τῶν δὲ ἐπιθυμιῶν αἱ μὲν κοιναὶ δοκοῦσι εἶναι, 
αἱ δὲ νῦν καὶ ἐπίθετοι οἶον ἡ μὲν τῆς τροφῆς φυσικῆ· 
πᾶς γὰρ ἐπίθυμεὶ ὁ ἐνδής ξηρᾶς ἡ ύγρᾶς τροφῆς, ὅτε δὲ 
ἀμφοῖς, καὶ εὐνής, φησὶν "Ομπρός, ὁ νέος καὶ ἀκμάζων· 
τὸ δὲ τοιαύτη ἣ τοιαύτη, οὐκέπτε πᾶς, οὐδὲ τῶν αὐτῶν. διὸ

ἀγαπᾶω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 2 
αισθήσεως, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7 
ἀμάξω: to be in full bloom, flourish, 1 
ἀμφος: both (dual), 8 
ἀφαίρεω: to take away, exclude, 2 
ἀφή, ἡ: sense of touch, touch, 5 
γυμνασίον, τό: bodily exercise; gymnasium, 3 
δικαιος: justly, rightly, lawfully, fairly, 3 
ἐλευθεριος, -εως, ἡ: generous, liberal, 4 
ἐν-δες, -ες: in need of, lacking, deficient, 1 
ἐπι-ουδιαστος, -ους: worthy of reproach, 2 
ἐπιθετος, -ους: acquired, 1 
εὐνή, ἡ: bed, 1 
ζῷον, τό: animal, 7 
ἡ: in so far as, in which way, by which way, 2 
θερμασία, ἡ: warmth, heat, 1 

1 κοινοτάτη (ἔστιν): (it is)...; ἀφη is subject 
δὴ: therefore, then; inferential 
καθ ἣν (ἔστιν): in which (there is) 
2 δόξειν ἄν: would...; aor. potential opt.; 
ἡ ἀκολασία is subject 
ὅτι: because 
ἡ ἀνθρωποι ἔσμαι: in so far as we are 
humans; i.e. qua human; relative clause 
3 ἡ καλας ἐσμαι: in so far as (we are) 
animals; i.e. qua animal 
4 θηριώδες (ἔστιν): pred. 
καὶ γὰρ: and in fact 
αἱ ἐλευθερώταται: the most befitting of a 
free man 
5 ἀφήρηνται: pf. pass. ἀφαίρεω 

ποι ἢ: bestial, savage, 2 
ἰδιος, -α, -ου: peculiar, private, one’s own, 5 
κοινος, -η, -ου: common(place); public, 7 
μέρος, -εως, τό: a part, share, portion, 4 
νεος, -α, -ου: young; new; subst. youth, 3 
ζηρος, -α, -ου: dry, 1 
Ομπρός, ὁ: Homer, 4 
ότε: sometimes, at times (ποτε), 9 
οὐκ-ἔτα: no more, no longer, no further, 4 
σωμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7 
τοισοῦτα, -άδε, -όνδε: this here sort, such, 3 
τρίψις, -εως, ἡ: rubbing, wearing away, 1 
τροφη, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 3 
ὑγρος, -α, -ου: moist, wet, 1 
ὑπαιρχω: to exist, is possible, 4 
μακάς, -η, -ου: produced by nature, natural, 6 

οἶον: for example; ‘in respect to which’ 
αἱ γνώμαινα: those (pleasures)... 
ἐν τοῖς γυμνασίοις: in gymasia 
6 τρίψεως: i.e. massages 
θερμασίας: warm baths or heat treatments 
7 πάν: entire 
8 μέρη: μέρη-α 
αἱ μὲν...αἱ δὲ: these...those; the accented 
article is used as a demonstrative (S1107) 
9 ἡ μὲν τῆς τροφῆς (ἐπιθυμία ἔστιν): 
ὅτε δὲ ἀμφοῖς: and sometimes...; dual gen. 
11 ὁ νέος καὶ ἀκμάζων (ἐπιθυμία) 
τὸ δὲ τοιαύτη...αὐτῶν: but everyone no 
longer (desires) this sort of thing or that 
sort of thing, not even of the same things
φαίνεται ἡμέτερον εἶναι. οὔ μὴν ἀλλ' ἔχει γε τι καὶ φυσικόν ἔτερα γὰρ ἔτεροις ἐστὶν ἡδέα, καὶ ἐνιὰ πᾶσιν ἦδιω τῶν τυχόντων. ἐν μὲν οὖν ταῖς φυσικαῖς ἐπιθυμίαις ὀλγοι ἀμαρτάνοι καὶ ἐφ' ἐν, ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖον τὸ γὰρ ἐσθίει τὰ τυχόντα ἤ πίνειν ἐως ἃν ὑπερπλησθῇ, ὑπερβάλλειν ἐστὶ τὸ κατὰ φύσιν τῷ πλήθει· ἀναπλήρωσις γὰρ τῆς ἐνδείας ἡ φυσικὴ ἐπιθυμία. διὸ λέγονται οὗτοι γαστρίμαργοι, ὡς παρὰ τὸ δέον πληροῦντες αὐτὴν. τοιοῦτοι δὲ γίνονται οἱ λίαν ἀνδραποδῶδεις. περὶ δὲ τὰς ἰδίας τῶν ἡδονῶν πολλοὶ καὶ πολλαχῶς ἀμαρτάνουσιν. τῶν γὰρ φιλοσοφικῶν λεγομένων ἡ τῷ χαίρειν οἷς μὴ δεῖ, ἡ τῷ μᾶλλον ἡ ὡς οἱ πολλοί, ἡ μὴ ὡς δεῖ, κατὰ πάντα δ' οἱ ἀκόλουθοι ὑπερ-

ἀναπληρώσις, -εως ἡ: fulfilling, filling, 1
ἀνδραποδώδης, -ες: slavish, servile, 2
γαστρίμαργος, -ος: gluttonous, 1
dεόν, τό: what is right, proper, 3
ἐς, μια, ἐν: one, single, alone, 9
ἐν· δεια, ἡ: lack, want, 3
ἐσθία: to eat, 2
dοζίς: until, as long as, 2
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ος: our, 1
ἰδιος, -α, -ος: peculiar, private, one's own, 5
λίαν: very, exceedingly, 1

13 φαίνεται ἡμέτερον εἶναι: (this desire) seems to be (peculiarly) our own οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ἀλλα: nevertheless ἔχει γε καὶ φυσικὸν: it has, at any rate, something natural also;


15 τυχόντων: than chance things; 'things happening,' aor. pple τυγχάνω and gen. of comparison

16 ἐφ' ἐν: for one thing; ἐπὶ + acc. expressing purpose (§1689.3d)
ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖον: (namely) for excess; 'or more' in apposition
τὰ τυχόντα: chance things; see above; acc.

17 ἐδος ἃν ὑπερπλησθῇ: until one...; general temporal clause with 3s aor. pass. subj.

μὴν: truly, surely, 5
ὁλγος, -η, -ων: few, little, small, 6
περά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
πίνω: to drink, 1
πλῆθος, ἡ: number, multitude; size, 2
πληρόω: to fill, 1
πολλαχῶς: in many ways, 2
ὑπερ-πίπλησιμα: to overfill, stuff, 1
φιλο-τοιούτως, -ος: fond of such and such, 1
φυσικός, -η, -ον: produced by nature, natural, 6

18 τὸ κατὰ φύσιν: what is according to nature; obj. of inf.
τὸ πληθεί: in...; dat. of respect
9 ἡ φυσικὴ ἐπιθυμία (ἐστὶ): ὡς...πληροῦντες: on the grounds that..., ‘since,’ ὡς + pple expresses an alleged cause from a character's point of view

20 παρά...: contrary to...
αὐτὴν: i.e. ἐπιθυμιάν

22 τῶν φιλοτοιούτων: among...; partitive gen.

23 τῶν χαίρειν: by...; articular inf. and dat. of cause
οἷς μὴ δεῖ (χαίρειν): whom...
τῶν μᾶλλον (χαίρειν): by...; dat. of cause ὡς οἱ πολλοὶ: as (much as)...; comparison

24 (τοι) μὴ (χαίρειν): not... κατὰ πάντα: in (respect to) all things
βάλλουσιν· καὶ γὰρ χαίρουσιν ἐνίοις οἷς οὐ δεί (μισητά γάρ), καὶ εἴ τισι δεῖ διαρκείων τοιούτων, μᾶλλον ἦ δεῖ καὶ ἦ ὡς οἱ πολλοί χαίρουσιν. ἦ μὲν οὖν περὶ τὰς ἰδιονόσ ύπερβολῆ ὑπὲρ ἁκολασία καὶ πρέπει, δῆλον· περὶ δὲ τὰς λύπας οὐχ ἀρσεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἀνδρείας τῷ ὑπομένειν λέγεται σῶφρων οὔθ ἀκόλαστος τῷ μῆ, ἀλλ’ ὁ μὲν ἀκόλαστος τῷ λυπεῖσθαι μᾶλλον ἦ δεῖ ὅτι τῶν ἴδεων οὐ πυγχάνει (καὶ τὴν λύπην δὲ ποιεῖ αὐτῷ ἢ ἡ ἴδονῆ), ὡ δὲ σωφρών τῷ μῆ λυπεῖσθαι τῇ ἀπουσίᾳ καὶ τῷ ἀπέχεσθαι τοῦ ἴδεος.

αἰτοθεία, ἡ: absence, 1
dῆλος, -ῆ, -ον: clear, evident, 9

25 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact
οἷς οὐ δεῖ (χαίρειν): which...
μισητά (ἰσιν)
26 τισί: dat. pl. τίς
μᾶλλον ἦ...ἦ...: more than...and than...
27 ὡς: as (much as)...; clause of comparison
28 ἦ...ὑπερβολὴ (ἐστίν): that...; place this nom. subj. within the following ὅτι clause
ὅτι...δῆλον (ἐστίν): (it is) clear that...; main verb; This construction is so common that it is often translated with the simple adverb 'clearly'

ψεκτόν: a blameworthy thing; neut. pred.
29 ἐπὶ...: in the case of...
τῷ ὑπομενέων: by...; articular inf. and dat. of cause; assume λύπας as object

μισήτος, -ῆ, -ον: hateful, odious, 1
ψεκτός, -ῆ, -ον: blameworthy, 3

οὐχ...λέγεται σῶφρων: one is not called
30 οὐδὲ (λέγεται) ἀκόλαστος τῷ μῆ (ὑπομένειν): nor is one called...
ἀλλ’ (λέγεται) ὁ μὲν ἀκόλαστος: add verb τῷ λυπεῖσθαι: by...; dat. of cause
31 ὅτι: because...

τυγχάνει: governs a partitive gen.
32 ποιεῖ: i.e. causes

αὐτῷ: dat. of interest
(λέγεται) ὁ δὲ σωφρόν: one (is called)...
τῷ μῆ λυπεῖσθαι: by...; dat. of cause
τῇ ἀπουσίᾳ: by...; dat. of cause; i.e. of pleasure
τοῦ ἴδεος: from...; gen. of separation
'Ο μὲν οὖν ἀκόλαστος ἐπιθυμεῖ τῶν ἡδεὼν πάντων ἡ
tῶν μάλιστα, καὶ ἀγεται ὑπὸ τῆς ἐπιθυμίας ὡστε ἀντὶ τῶν
ἀλλων ταῦθα αἱρεῖσθαι· διὰ καὶ λυπεῖται καὶ ἀποτυγχά

νον καὶ ἐπιθυμῶν· μετὰ λύπης γὰρ ἡ ἐπιθυμία· ἀπόπη
δ' ἐσουκε τὸ δί' ἡδονὴν λυπεῖσθαι. ἐλλείποντες δὲ τὰ περὶ τὰς
ἡδονὰς καὶ ἡττον ἢ δεῖ χαίροντες οὔ πάνω γίνονται· οὔ γὰρ
ἀνθρωπικὴ ἑστὶν ἡ τοιαύτη ἀνασκησία· καὶ γὰρ τὰ λοιπὰ
ξῶνα διακρίνει τὰ βρόματα, καὶ τοῖς μὲν χαίρει τοῖς δ' οὔ·
eἶ δὲ τῷ μηδὲν ἑστὶν ἡδονὴ μηδὲ διαφέρει ἐτέρου ἐτέρου, πόρρω
ἀν εἴπο τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἔναι· οὔ τέτευχε δ' ὁ τοιοῦτος ὀνόματος
dia τὸ μὴ πάνω γίνεσθαι. ὃ δὲ σῶφρων μέσως μὲν περὶ ταῦτ'
ἐχει· ὡστ' ὡστε γὰρ ἰδεῖται οἷς μάλιστα ο ἀκόλαστος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλ

Δάγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3
Διναισθοία: ἡ: insensibility, 2
Ἀνθρωπικός, -ή, -όν: human, of a human, 2
Ἀντι: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
Απο-τυγχάνω: fail to attain (gen), 2
Α-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
Βρώμα, βρώματος τό: food, meat, 2
Δια-κρίνω: decide, settle; distinguish, 2
ζώον, τό: animal, 7
μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3
μηδὲ: and not, but not, nor, 3
οὐν, -ατος, τό: name, 6
πάνω: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6
πόρρω: far, far from, 3
ὡστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

1 τῶν μάλιστα: those especially (pleasant)
2 ὑπὸ: by...; gen. expressing agency
3 αἱρεῖσθαι: so as...; result
4 ταῦτα: ταῦτα
5 καὶ...καὶ...καὶ...: also...both...and...
6 ἐπιθυμία (ἐστίν)
5 ἐλλείποντες: (people)...
6 χαίροντες: and (people)....; governs ἡττον ἢ δεῖ
γίνονται: i.e. exist
7 καὶ γὰρ: and in fact
8 τοῖς μὲν...τοῖς δί(δ): some...other...
9 τῷ: for someone; alternative form for

Ηδομαι: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
Μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3
Μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
Μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
Δομαι, -ατος, τό: name, 6
Πάνω: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6
Πόρρω: far, far from, 3
Ὡςτε: so that, that, so as to, 9

1 τῶν μάλιστα: those especially (pleasant)
2 ὑπὸ: by...; gen. expressing agency
3 αἱρεῖσθαι: so as...; result
4 ταῦτα: ταῦτα
5 καὶ...καὶ...καὶ...: also...both...and...
6 ἐπιθυμία (ἐστίν)
5 ἐλλείποντες: (people)...
6 χαίροντες: and (people)....; governs ἡττον ἢ δεῖ
γίνονται: i.e. exist
7 καὶ γὰρ: and in fact
8 τοῖς μὲν...τοῖς δί(δ): some...other...
9 τῷ: for someone; alternative form for

Indefinite τι; dat. of interest
Μη-δέ: nor
Ἐτέρου: from...; gen. of separation
10 Δι τὸ...ἐναι: from...; articular inf. (-inf) εἰμί
τοῦ...ἐναι: from...; and gen. of separation
Τέτευχε: pf. τυγχάνω + partitive gen.
11 Δι τὸ...γίνεσθαι: happening
Μέσως ἔχει: ἔχω (‘is disposed’) + adv. is
often equiv. to εἰμί + pred.
Οἶς (ήδεται)... in what; ‘(in those things) in
which;’ the missing antecedent is dat. obj.
and the relative clause
λον δυσχεραίνει, οὗτ' ὀλος οἷς μὴ δεῖ οὖθε σφόδρα τοιοῦτῳ οὖδὲνι, οὔτ' ἀπόνταν λυπεταί οὐδ' ἐπιθυμεί, ἢ μετρίως, οὖθε μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ, οὔτ' οὗτ' τῶν τοιούτων οὖδέν· ὅσα δὲ πρὸς ὑγιείαν ἐστών ἢ πρὸς εὐεξίαν ἤδεα ὑντα, τούτων ὀρέξεται μετρίως καὶ ἡς δεῖ, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἡτὼν μὴ ἐμ- ποδίων τούτων ὑντων ἢ παρὰ τὸ καλὸν ἢ ὑπὲρ τὴν οὖσιαν. ὁ γὰρ οὔτως ἔχων μᾶλλον ἀγαπά τὰς τοιοւτὰς ἤδονᾶς τῆς ἀξίας· ὁ δὲ σῶφρον οὐ τοιοῦτος, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος.

12. Ἐκοισιώ ἐκ μᾶλλον ἐσκεφτε ἢ ἀκολούθη τῆς δελίας. ἢ μὲν γὰρ δὲ ἠδονήν, ἢ δὲ διὰ λύπην, ἢν τὸ μὲν αἰρέτον, τὸ δὲ φευκτὸν καὶ ἢ μὲν λύπη εξίστησι καὶ φθείρει τὴν τοῦ ἐχοντος φύσιν, ἢ δὲ ἠδονή οὖδὲν τοιοῦτο ποιεῖ. μᾶλλον

άγαπάω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 2
αἰρετός, -ή, -όν: choiceworthy, chosen, 5
ἀξία, ἡ: worth, value, 2
ἀπε-εἰμι: to be away, be absent, 1
δείλια, ἡ: cowardice, 4
δυσ-χεραίνω: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3
ἐμ-πόδιος, -οῦν: impeding, hindering (dat), 1
ἐξ-κατημένος: to alter; stupefy; disgrace, 2
eὖ-εξία, ἡ: well being, being disposed well, 1
μετρίως: moderately, in due measure, 2

13 οὐδὲ...οὖθέ...: not even...nor...

(ἤδεται) οἷς μὴ δεῖ: add verb from l. 12
tοιοῦτον οὖδὲν: obj. of ἠδεται
14 οὖθε(ε): and not
ἀποντων: (these things) being absent; gen. abs. with missing noun; ἀπε-εἰμι
οὐδέ...οὖθέ...: nor...nor...
μετρίως (λυπεταί καὶ ἐπιθυμεί)
15 οὖθεν: any; positive following οὖθε
16 ὡς...ἔστιν...εὐεξίαν: as many things as...
the antecedent is the following τοιοῦτων ὑντα: pple εἰμι modifying ὡς
tοιοῦτων: partitive gen. obj. of main verb
17 μὴ...οὖθεν: (if) not...; pple εἰμι is conditional in sense (thus, μὴ instead of οὐ); ἐμποδίων is gen. pred. and governs a dat.

ὄργω: to desire, long for, strive (gen.), 6
ὁρθός, -ῆ, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6
οὐσία, ἡ: substance, essence; wealth, 2
παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
σφόδρα: violently, vehemently, 2
ὑγεία, ἡ: health, 4
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5
φευκτός, -οῦν: to be avoided or escaped, 2
φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

18 παρά...: contrary to...
ὑπέρ τὴν οὖσιαν: i.e. beyond his means to pay; οὖσια carries the ordinary meaning of ‘wealth’ or ‘property’ in this context
ὁ...οὖθεν ἔχον: the one...; ἔχω (‘is disposed’) + adv.
19 τῆς ἀξίας: than...; gen. of comparison
20 ὡς ὁ ὀρθός λόγος: as...; supply a missing verb: ‘dictates’ or ‘requires’
21 τῆς δελίας: gen. of comparison
22 ἢ μὲν...ἄ...: this one...this one...; i.e. ἀκολούθης and δελία; the accented articles are in fact demonstratives (S1107)
23 ὡς: of which; partitive gen. i.e. pleasure and pain
τὸ μὲν (ἔστιν)...τὸ δὲ (ἔστιν)...: one thing...the other thing...
δὴ ἐκούσιον. διὸ καὶ ἐπονειδιστότερον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδισθῆναι ῥάον
πρὸς αὐτὰ· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ βίῳ τὰ τουαύτα, καὶ οἱ ἐδισθησθοὶ ἀκίνδυνοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν φοβερῶν ἀνάπαλων. δόξειε
δ᾽ ἂν σὺν ὀμοίως ἐκούσιον ἡ δειλία εἶναι τοῖς καθ᾽ ἐκαστον·
αὐτὴ μὲν γὰρ ἄλυπος, ταῦτα δὲ διὰ λύπην ἔξιστησιν, ὡστε
καὶ τὰ ὅπλα ῥππεῖν καὶ τάλλα ἀσχημονεῖν· διὸ καὶ δοκεῖ
βίαία εἶναι. τῷ δ᾽ ἀκόλαστῳ ἀνάπαλῳ τὰ μὲν καθ᾽ ἐκαστα
ἐκούσια (ἐπιθυμοῦντι γὰρ καὶ ὁρεγομένῳ), τὸ δ᾽ ὅλον ἤττου·
οὐθές γὰρ ἐπιθυμεῖ ἀκόλαστος εἶναι. τὸ δ᾽ ὅνομα τῆς ἀκο-
λασίας καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς παιδικὰς ἀμαρτίας φέρομεν· ἔχουσι

άκινδυνος, -οῦ: without danger or risk, 1
ἄ-λυπος, -οῦ: without pain, 1
ἀμαρτία, ἡ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3
ἀνά-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
ἀσχημονέω: to disgrace oneself, 1
βλαίας, -ας, -οῦ: compulsory, forcible, 6
βίος, ὁ: life, 5
δειλία, ἡ: cowardice, 4
ἐθιζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
ἐθισμός, ὁ: habit, practice, 1
ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8

25 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
ἐκούσιον (ἢ ἀκολασία ἐστίν): neut. pred.
ἐπονειδιστότερον (ἦ ἀκολασία ἐστίν): neut. pred.
καὶ γὰρ: for in fact
ἐθισθὴναι: aor. pass. dep. inf.
ῥάον (ἐστίν): easier, 1
πρὸς αὐτὰ: either (1) against them; i.e.
against acts of intemperance or (2) in
regard to them; i.e. acts of temperance

27 ἀκίνδυνοι (εἰσίν)
ἐπὶ...: in the case of...
ἄναπαλιν (ἐστίν)
δόξειε δ᾽ ἂν: would...; aor. potential opt.
28 τοῖς καθ᾽ ἐκαστοῖς: to particular cases (of
cowardice); "to those each by each," dat. of
special adv. ὁμοίως
29 αὐτή (ἐστίν): i.e. δειλία
ταύτα: i.e. τὰ ἐκαστα, particular cases of
cowardice; neut. pl. subject of 3s verb
ἐξιστησιν: 3s pres.; supply ‘a person’ as obj.

εξ-ιστημι: to alter; stupefy; displace, 2
ἐπονειδιστος, -οῦ: worthy of reproach, 2
ὀλος, ὁ, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 1
ὀνομα, -ατος, τὸ: name, 6
ὄπλων, το: arms; tool, implement, 2
ὁρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
παιδικὸς, ὁ, -ον: of a child, 1
ῥάον: easier, 1
ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3
φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6
ὡστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

ὡστε: so as + infs.; result clause
30 ῥππεῖν: i.e. in retreat
τ(ά) ἄλλα: in other respects; acc. of respect
δοκεῖ: they seem; add τὰ ἐκαστα as subject
τὸ ἀκόλαστῳ: for the indulgent man...;
 dat. of interest
δὲ: but
ἐκαθ᾽ ἐκαστά (εἰσίν): particular cases (of
intemperance)
επιθυμοῦντι γὰρ καὶ ὁρεγομένῳ: for (the
indulgent man) is...; causal pres. pples
modifying τὸ ἀκόλαστῳ: the use of γὰρ
is awkward and redundant
τὸ ὅλον (ἐστίν) ἦττον (ἐκούσιον): the
whole...; i.e. ἀκολασία as a whole instead
of in particular cases
33 οὐθές: οὐδὲις
34 ἐπὶ: onto...;
φέρομεν: we apply; as often with ἐπὶ
γάρ τινα ὀμοιότητα. πότερον δὲ ἀπὸ ποτέρου καλεῖται, οὐδὲν πρὸς τὰ νῦν διαφέρει, δῆλον δὲ ὅτι τὸ ὑστερὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ προτέρου. οὐ κακῶς δ᾽ ἐσχῆ μετεπηνεύχθαι· κεκολάσθαι γάρ δεὶ τὸ τῶν αἰσχρῶν ορέγομενον καὶ πολλὴν αὐξήσων ἔχον, τοιοῦτον δὲ μάλιστα ἡ ἐπιθυμία καὶ ὁ παῖς· κατʼ ἐπιθυμίαν γὰρ ζῶσι καὶ τὰ παιδία, καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τούτοις ἡ τοῦ ἠδέος ὥρεξις. εἰ οὖν µή ἐσται εὐπεθέσθαι καὶ ὑπὸ τὸ ἄρχον, ἐπὶ πολὺ ἤζει· ἀπληστός γὰρ ἡ τοῦ ἠδέος ὥρεξις καὶ πανταχόθεν τῷ ἀνοήτω, καὶ ἡ τῆς ἐπιθυμίας ἐνέργεια αὐξεῖ τὸ συγγενές, κἂν μεγάλαι καὶ σφοδραί ὁ σι, καὶ τὸν λογισμὸν ἐκκρούσθωσι.

δὲ δὲ μετρίας εἶναι αὐτῶς καὶ ἀλλας, καὶ τῷ λόγῳ μηθὲν ἐναντιοσθαι—τὸ δὲ τοιοῦτον εὐπεθέσθαι λέγομεν καὶ κεκο-

ά-νόητος, -ον: senseless, foolish, insensitive, 1
ά-πληστος, -ου: unfulfilled, insatiate, 1
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3
 αὐξάνω (αὔω): to increase, enrich, 3
 αὔξησις, -εσι: increase, development, 3
 δήλος, -η: clear, evident, 9
 ἐκ-κρούω: to knock out = expel, overpower, 1
 ἐναντίον: to oppose, contradict (dat) 2
 ἐν-ἐργεία, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 ἐν-πειθής, -ης: ready to obey, obedient, 2
 ζῶο: to live, 4
 ἱκόμω: to have come, be present, 3
 κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4
 κολάζω: to correct, punish, discipline, 5
 λογισμός: calculation, reasoning, account, 3

1 πότερον ἀπὸ ποτέρου: which (of the two) ... from which; ind. quest. and subject
οὐδὲν...διαφέρει: makes no difference; or 'not at all makes a difference,' inner acc.
2 τὰ νῦν: things at present
δῆλον (ἔστιν) δ᾽ ὅτι: (it is) ... impersonal; τὸ ὑστερον (καλεῖται): the later one...
3 οὗ κακῶς: somewhat well; ‘not badly’
 μετεπηνεύχθαι: that the metaphor has been made; pf. pass. inf. μεταφέρω ; Aristotle refers to applying (φέρομεν) the name to (ἐπὶ) children’s mistakes in 1119b33-34
 κεκολάσθαι: pf. pass. inf.
4 τὸ...ορέγομενον...ἐχον: (the thing)...; acc. subj. of κεκολάσθαι; mid. and act. pple

τοιοῦτον (εἰσί): (are) such a thing
5 κατ(α)...: according to...
6 ζῶο: ζά-ουσι
 τοῦτος: i.e. τοις παιδιοις
7 εἰ...ἐστι, ἤξει: if...; fut. more vivid (εἰ fut., fut.); fut. ἐγώ ἤς: translate protasis as pres. ὑπὸ...ἀρχον: under an authority's control; ἐπὶ πολὺ: far; 'over much' (S1689.3c)
8 τῷ ἀναγίθα: for a foolish person; interest
9 τὸ συγγενές: (its) natural power
10 κ(αί) εἰς δος, ἐκκρούομαι: and if...; pres. general (ἐρα + subj., pres.) 3p εἰμι
11 ἐναι αὐτὰς: that they be...; ind. disc. τῷ λόγῳ: to reason; dat. obj. of inf.
12 λέγομεν: we call (x) (y); double acc.
λασμένον—ώσπερ δε τὸν παῖδα δει κατὰ τὸ πρόσταγμα τοῦ παιδαγωγοῦ ζήν, οὖτω καὶ τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν κατὰ τὸν λόγον. διῳ δει τοῦ σώφρονος τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν συμφωνεῖν τῷ λόγῳ: σκοπὸς γάρ ἀμφοῖν τὸ καλὸν, καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖ ὁ σώφρων ὃν δει καὶ ὡς δει καὶ ὅτε οὖτω δε τάττει καὶ ὁ λόγος. ταῦτ’ οὖν ἡμῖν εἰρήσθω περὶ σωφροσύνης.

13 κεκολασμένον: disciplined; or ‘corrected,’ pf. pass. pple. κολάζω
κατὰ: according to...
14 ζήν: inf.
καὶ: also
τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν (δεῖ ζήν): the desiring part
κατὰ: according to...
15 τοῦ σώφρονος: gen. poss.
τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν (δεῖ ζήν): the desiring part
16 τῷ λόγῳ: with...; dat. of compound verb
17 ὅτε (δεῖ): experience; perfect πάσχω
καὶ: also
18 ἡμῖν: dat. of agent with pf. verb
εἰρήσθω: let...; 3s pf. pass. imperative

ἀμφοῖς: both (dual), 8
ἐπιθυμητικός, -ή, -όν: desiring, 2
ζάω: to live, 4
παιδαγωγός, ὁ: pedagogue, tutor, 1
παιδός, παιδός, ὁ, ἥ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
πρόσ-ταγμα, -ατος, τό: order, command, 1
σκοπός, ὁ: target, mark, 2
συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony or agreement, 2
τάττω: to assign, put (in order); order, 2

παιδαγωγὸς, ὁ: pedagoge, tutor, 1
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἥ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
πρόσ-ταγμα, -ατος, τό: order, command, 1
σκοπός, ὁ: target, mark, 2
συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony or agreement, 2
τάττω: to assign, put (in order); order, 2

ἄμφω: both (dual), 8
ἐπιθυμητικός, -ή, -όν: desiring, 2
ζάω: to live, 4
Glossary
Aristotle’s Nicomachean Ethics Books II and III
Alphabetized Vocabulary (10 or more times)

The following is a running list of all 152 words that occur ten or more times in Book II and III. A running list is found in the introduction to this volume. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author.

ἀγαθός, ἡ, -όν: good, brave, capable, 33
ἀγνοέω: be ignorant of, be in ignorance, 15
ἀγνοια, ἡ: ignorance, 14
αἴρεω: to seize, take; mid. choose, 10
αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 19
ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: intemperance, licentiousness 11
ἀ-κολαστός, -ον: indulgent, intemperate, 24
ἀκούσια, ἡ: involuntary behavior, 10
ἀκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, extreme, 13
ἀλλά: but, 91
ἀλλος, -η, -όν: other, one...another, 39
ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, do wrong, 11
ἀν: modal adv., 70
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: courage, bravery, manliness, 27
ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον: courageous, brave, manly, 48
ἀνθρώπος, ὁ: human being, man, 16
ἀπέχω: to be distant, keep away from, 11
ἀπλῶς: simply; without qualification, 11
ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 13
ἀρετή, ἡ: virtue, excellence, 63
ἀρχή, ἡ: origin, source; beginning, 19
αὐτός, -η, -ό: he, she, it; same; -self, 105
βουλέω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 13
βουλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 10
γάρ: for, (yes) for; since, because, 227
γε: at least, indeed, at any rate, 18
γίνομαι: come to be, become, be born, 71
δέ: but, and, on the other hand, 528
δειλός, -η, -όν: cowardly, timid, 16
δεόω: need, lack (gen.); mid. ask, request; impers. δεῖ, one ought, it is necessary (inf.), 70
δί: exactly, precisely, just; accordingly, 52
διά: through (gen); on account of, 101
δια-φέρω: differ; surpass, be superior to, 15
δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right, lawful, fair, 15
διό: δι’ ὅ, on account of which, for which reason, 24
δοκέω: to seem (good); think, decide, 40
ἐάν: εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 12
ἐαυτοῦ, ἐης, ἐου: himself, her-, it-, them-, 23
ε: if, whether, 50
εἰμί: to be, exist, 296
εἰς: into, to, in regard to (acc.), 12
ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 46
ἐκαστός, -ης, -ου: each, every one, 33
ἐκούσιος, -ου: voluntary; willing, 27
ἐλ-λείπω: to be deficient, fall short, lack, 19
ἐλ-λειψις, -εος, ἡ: deficiency, falling short, 30
ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 130
ἐναντίος, -ας, -ον: opposite, contrary, 14
ἐνεκα: for the sake of, for (+ gen.), 14
ἐνοι, -ας, -α: some, 11
ἐνις, -εος, ἡ: disposition, habit, state, 24
ἐνικα: to seem, be like, seem likely, (dat.), 18
ἐπανέω: to praise, approve, commend, 11
ἐπε: when, after; since, because, 10
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.), 11
ἐπι: upon (gen.), to (acc.), near, at (dat.); in addition, furthermore, besides, 89
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 21
ἐργον, τό: function, task; deed, work, 11
ἐτερος, -ας, -ον: other, different, 13
ἐτι: still, besides, further; in addition, 26
ἐὖ: well, 28
ἐξω: have; be able; be disposed; know, 62
ἡ: or (either...or); than, 134
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, 40
ἡδνης, -εια, -ψ: pleasant; sweet, 29
ἡμείς: we, 47
ἡττων, -ου: less, weaker, inferior, 21
θάνατος, -ου: mortal, 10
θαρρέω: to be confident, bold, 10
θρασύς, -εια, -ψ: rash; overly bold, 10
θυμός, ὁ: anger, passion, spirit, 19
ὕσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 15
καί: and; also, even, too; in fact, actually 707
κακία, ἡ: vice, wickedness, cowardice, 14
κακός, -ης, -ου: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 28
καλός, -ης, -ου: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 33
κατά: down (from, to), in, according to, in regard to, corresponding to, 86
κινδυνος, ὁ: danger, risk, venture, 10
κύριος, -ας, -ου: having power, in power over (gen.), 10
λαμβάνω: to receive, grasp, take, 10
λέγω, ἔρεω, εἶπον: to say, call; mean, 93
λόγος, ὁ: word, speech, account, principle, 26
λοιπός, -ῆ, -ῶν: remaining, the rest, 12
λυπέω: to cause pain; mid. be in pain, 17
λύπη, ἡ: pain, 25
λυπηρός, -ῆ, -ὸν: painful, 14
µᾶλλον: more, rather, 50
µέν: on the one hand, 212
µέσος, -η, -ῶν: middle (of), mean, 43
µεσότης, -τής, ἡ: the middle, mean, 34
µῆ: not, lest, 70
µηδεῖς, µηδὲ-µία, µηδὲ-έν: no one, nothing, 15
µικρός, -ά, -ῶν: small, little, 14
ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 1409
οἶδα: to know, 14
οἶς, -α, -ον: which sort, who; for example, 49
ὁλως: in general; entirely, 11
ὁµοίως: in the same way; similarly, 31
ὁργίζω: to make angry; mid. be angry, 10
ὁς, ἡ, ὁ: who, which, that, 136
ὁσος -η -ον: as many as; all who, all which 19
ὅτε: when, at some time, 15
ὅτι: that; because, 61
οὐ, οὐκ, οὔχ, οὔχι: not, 148
οὐ-δέ: and not, but not, nor; not even, 65
οὐδεῖς, οὔδε-µία, οὔδε-έν: no one, nothing, 51
οὖν: and so, then; at all events, 67
οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 33
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 198
οὗτος: thus, in this way, 39
πάθος, -ος, τό: feeling, passion, 21
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 79
πάσχω: to suffer; allow, experience, 12
περι: around, about, concerning (acc/gen) 143
πλείων, πλέων (-ονος) ὁ, ἡ: more, 10
ποιέω: to do, make; bring about, treat, 28
ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 13
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 25
πράξις, -εις, ἡ: action; transaction, 39
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 68
προ-αἱρέομαι: to choose, 15
προ-αἱρεσις, -εις, ἡ: choice, 22
πρός: to, in relation to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 70
πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 10
πῶς: how in what way?, 18
πως: somehow, in some/a certain way, 13
σωφροσύνη, ἦ: temperance, prudence, 11
σώφρων, -οντος: temperate, moderate, 26
τε: and, both, 25
τέλος, -εος, τό: end; motive, 29
τέχνη, ἦ: craft, art, 10
τις, τι: anyone, -thing, someone, -thing, 74
τίς, τί: who?, which?; why?, 29
τοιοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: such, this sort, 73
τυγχάνω: to chance upon, attain; happen, 13
ὑπερ-βάλλω: to exceed, overshoot, 22
ὑπερ-βολή, ἦ: excess, 35
ὑπό: by, because of, (gen.), under, 22
ὑπο-μένω: to endure, abide, remain, 20
φαίνω: show; mid. appear, seem, 32
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
φηµί: to say, claim, assert, 12
φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, dreadful, 15
φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 23
φύσις, -εως ἦ: nature, 21
φύω: grow, be by nature, be natural + inf. 12
χαίρω: to rejoice in, enjoy (dat); greet, 23
χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harsh, 12
ὡς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 61
ὡσπερ: as, just as, as if, 30